DOCUMENT RESUME

ED 221 207 IR 010 382

AUTHOR	Borchardt, D. H., Ed.; Thawley, John, Ed.
TITLE	Bibliographical Services to the Nation: The Next Decade. Proceedings of a Conference (Sydney, Australia, August 26-27, 1980). Development of Resource Sharing Networks. Networks Study No. 16.
INSTITUTION	National Library of Australia, Canberra.
REPORT NO	ISBN-0-642-99218-5
PUB DATE	81
NOTE	231p.
AVAILABLE FROM	Sales and Subscriptions Unit, National Library of Australia, Canberra, ACT 2600, Australia ($0.75).
EDRS PRICE	MF01 Plus Postage. PC Not Available from EDRS.
DESCRIPTORS	*Bibliographies; *Cataloging; Databases; Discographies; Foreign Countries; Government Publications; Indexes; Intellectual Disciplines; *Library Cooperation; *National Libraries; Nonprint Media; Online Systems; Standards; Union Catalogs
IDENTIFIERS	*Australia; *National Bibliographies

ABSTRACT

As organized by the Working Party on Bibliography of the Australian Advisory Council on Bibliographical Services, this conference brings together librarians and bibliographers to examine Australian national requirements for bibliographic services and control. Seven conference sessions provide discussions of the Australian National Bibliography (ANB) (J. Flesch), Australian government publications (A. E. Miller), Australian indexing services (D. Abbott), nonbook materials including maps and music (J. Wells, H. Sugden, and G. Stecher), national union catalogs (N. Stockdale), retrospective national bibliography (P. Fanning), and gaps in Australian subject bibliography (D. H. Borchardt). Each session as presented in this proceedings includes a paper with recommendations for improvement of the service in question, introductory remarks made at the conference by the author of the paper, a prepared response by another conference participant, and the more significant comments on the paper as they emerged from edited versions of the tape-recorded discussions. A summary of all the recommendations made in the course of the conference, an explanation of abbreviations used throughout the proceedings, a name and title index, and a list of conference participants are attached. (ESR)

****
* Reproductions supplied by EDRS are the best that can be made *
* from the original document. *
****

ED221207

DEVELOPMENT OF RESOURCE SHARING NETWORKS:
NETWORKS STUDY No. 16

Bibliographical Services to the Nation: The Next Decade

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF EDUCATION
NATIONAL INSTITUTE OF EDUCATION
EDUCATIONAL RESOURCES INFORMATION
CENTER (ERIC)

- This document has been reproduced as received from the person or organization originating it.
- Minor changes have been made to improve reproduction quality.

- Points of view or opinions stated in this document do not necessarily represent official NIE position or policy.

Proceedings of a Conference
held in Sydney 26-27 August 1980

Edited by D.H. Borchardt and John Thawley
for the Working Party on Bibliography
of the Australian Advisory Council on Bibliographical Services

IR010382

"PERMISSION TO REPRODUCE THIS MATERIAL IN MICROFICHE ONLY HAS BEEN GRANTED BY

Sandra Duffield

TO THE EDUCATIONAL RESOURCES INFORMATION CENTER (ERIC)."

Canberra National Library of Australia 1981

Bibliographical Services to the Nation : the Next Decade
(1980 : Sydney, N.S.W.).

Bibliographical Services to the Nation : the Next
Decade : proceedings of a conference held in Sydney
26-27 August 1980 / edited by D.H. Borchardt and John
Thawley for the Working Party on Bibliography of the
Australian Advisory Council on Bibliographical
Services. - Canberra : National Library of Australia,
1981. - vii, 225p. ; 25cm. - (Development of resource
sharing networks : networks study ; no. 16).
Includes bibliographical references and index.
ISBN 0 642 99218 5.

1. Bibliographical services - Australia - Congresses.
2. Libraries - Australia - Congresses. I. Borchardt,
D.H. (Dietrich Hans), 1916-. II. Thawley, John, 1953-.
III. Australian Advisory Council on Bibliographical
Services. Working Party on Bibliography. IV. National
Library of Australia. (Series).

025.5

Printed by the Dominion Press, Melbourne

CONTENTS

Preface v

Opening of Conference by The Hon. Sir Peter Crisp vii

Session 1 The Australian National Bibliography

The Australian National Bibliography, by J. Flesch 1

Session 2 Australian Government Publications

The Bibliographical Control of Australian Government Publications, by A.E. Miller 21

Session 3 Australian Indexing Services

Australian Indexing Services, by D. Abbott 71

Session 4a Nonbook Materials - Maps

The Current State of Bibliographic Control of Australian Maps and Other Cartographic Materials, by J. Wells 93

Session 4b Nonbook Materials - Music

The Need for Improved Bibliographical Services in the Field of Australian Music, by H. Sugden 113

Session 4c Nonbook Materials - Music

Discography and the Research Library Approach to Extended Library - Oriented Bibliographic Control, by G. Stecher 125

Session 5 National Union Catalogues

National Union Catalogues, by N. Stockdale 137

Session 6 Retrospective National Bibliography

Australian Retrospective National Bibliography, by P. Fanning 161

Session 7 Gaps in Subject Bibliography

Australian Subject Bibliography, by D.H. Borchardt 183

Closing address 199

Summary of Recommendations 201

Abbreviations 211

Index 213

List of Participants 223

PREFACE

In 1973 the Australian Advisory Council on Bibliographical Services established four permanent Working Parties. The terms of reference of the Working Party on Bibliography, which include a definition of bibliography, are as follows:

1. To promote the study and application of bibliography* within the general objectives of AACOBS.
2. To develop the standardisation in Australia of bibliographic description including machine-readable records, in co-operation with the Working Party on Systems and Communications.
3. To promote subject indexing with special reference to Australia and Australian libraries.
4. To offer advisory and consulting services on bibliographic work in Australia.

> * Bibliography is the systematic description, including the comparative study, of printed documents and other forms of recorded data, and the technique of carrying out such descriptions with a view to organising the services or constructing the tools designed to facilitate access to recorded knowledge.

To further these objectives, the Working Party has for several years endeavoured to bring together in a conference librarians and bibliographers to examine Australian national requirements for the bibliographic control of our published records of sources of information. During long preliminary discussions the Working Party became aware of the need for specific subject surveys of existing and desirable bibliographical services so that the proposed national conference might have factual foundations for its deliberations. To this end a series of seven essays was commissioned in 1977, and another of five essays were invited in 1979. These contributions from reputable scholars were published in 1980 in one volume under the title of *Twelve essays in subject bibliography.*[1] These *Twelve essays* were distributed in advance to all persons attending the National Conference and formed, together with D.H. Borchardt's *Australian bibliography*[2] the documentation on which the papers presented at the Conference were based.

The papers given at the Conference together with the more significant comments made during the discussions of them are now published.

The discussions are edited versions of the tape-recorded proceedings, re-arranged to avoid repetition and irrelevancies.

Readers of these proceedings should also note that some speakers made it clear in the context of their remarks that they were not necessarily speaking on behalf of the institutions they represented at the Conference.

It remains to be said that AACOBS is beholden to the State Library of New South Wales and the State Librarian, Mr Russell Doust, for having arranged the availability of the State Office Block Theatrette for the Conference. Profound thanks are due to Jennifer Alison, Fisher Library, University of Sydney for having taken care of local arrangements in Sydney and to John Thawley for his dedication to this project, especially with the preparation of papers, their editing and overseeing the typing for publication. The assistance of Mrs Marion Newman, AACOBS Secretariat, is also gratefully acknowledged.

The preparation of the typescript for photo off-set printing was carried out by Mrs N. McElwee and Mrs V. Machin. Their dedication to this task is much appreciated.

D.H. Borchardt
Convenor,
AACOBS Working Party on Bibliography

---

1. *Twelve essays on Australian subject bibliography.* Edited by D.H. Borchardt, Canberra, National Library of Australia, 1980. (Development of resource sharing networks: networks study, no. 12).

2. Borchardt, D.H. *Australian bibliography: a guide to printed sources of information.* 3rd edn Rushcutters Bay, N.S.W., Pergamon Press, 1976.

Opening of Conference by The Hon. Sir Peter Crisp

Ladies & Gentlemen,

As Chairman of AACOBS I welcome you, particularly those of you who are not members of AACOBS, to this Conference. It is from the point of view of AACOBS, quite an important one, inasmuch as it is the culmination of some years of effort - of sustained effort - by one of our major working parties, the Working Party on Bibliography, to put into a national perspective what they perceive as major gaps in Australian bibliography.

It is a very conscientious working party and the thanks of AACOBS as a whole are extended to its members.

The background of the Conference is reflected in *The twelve essays on Australian subject bibliography* which were commissioned by the Working Party on Bibliography and published by the National Library in its series of Network Studies.

So much for the scene from which this Conference sprang.

Many years ago when I was pitchforked into the library scene - you might say it was a Cesarian section not a natural birth - I did a crash course which involved meeting all the prominent librarians around Australia. Reflecting on the personalities of some of those that I met, I used to say that if one scratched a librarian you were bound to find a cataloguer. Well, the years have gone by, personalities have changed, and lately I have been beginning to think that if you scratch a little bit deeper one finds a bibliographer. There again I may have been over influenced by some of the personalities with whom I have come in contact but, after all, that is to me as a layman but a logical progression. You must first have analysis but if analysis is not succeeded by synthesis it becomes a rather arid, dusty path leading nowhere if pursued only for its own ends. So that I see this current interest in bibliography as the natural culmination of that great emphasis that was placed a few years ago in Australia on cataloguing.

I remember a time when in America I met a Professor of Pure Mathematics who had been lured into the library camp and who had taken quite a high appointment in the library world. I was curious to know why he had left the mathematical chair which he had previously occupied. He replied that the answer was quite simple: both mathematics and librarianship are concerned with the organisation of knowledge. Any simple answer always leaves itself open to quibbling, but it did convey to me perfectly what he felt and what I feel about your profession.

Within that profession and in its organization, bibliography must play a pre-eminent part. I am glad to see it stated that, in the words of your Convenor, it should be conducted with self discipline and discernment. This is undoubtedly important because I remember that some years ago I was called upon to do some research in depth on a narrow subject, but a subject in which, five years before I commenced my enquiry, it had been estimated that there were no less than 16,000 references in print. I shall never forget the sense of drowning that I had when confronted with this knowledge. The elementary bibliographies that were available and the multitude of journals to which one was referred, led to a feeling that the waters were closing over your head. I was greatly helped by the librarians of the day, but I must say I was not always conscious of the discernment to which your Convenor refers in his paper.

I also remember the struggle that I had once to locate, only finally to discard, a paper written by a Pakistani Professor of Biology, published in a Chilean dental journal, strangley enough in English. I finally got hold of it and I can only say it was a perfect example where discernment might have saved me a lot of trouble.

But of course one is up against a big problem because there are three things that will militate against any kind of discernment in this type of environment. One is the publish or perish syndrome which leads to an awful lot of rubbish being printed which should never see the light of day; the other is the multiplicity of journals which are coming into being in every discipline; and the third is a habit which is engrained among members of my profession, but which is equally discernible in others, of citing everything which tends to support their case no matter what they think of it on its merits. So the pressures against the exercise of that discernment are considerable, but I hope you can learn to exercise it nevertheless.

When I referred to scratching a librarian even deeper you may have thought that I had some personalities in mind and I think this is a proper place in which to record the gratitude of AACOBS and I hope of yourselves to the Convenor of this Conference. Dietrich, as you all know, and as you will know even better after reading this remarkable paper which he has written for this Conference, has made bibliography a subject very dear to him and we are grateful in AACOBS for the typical enthusiasm with which he pursues his aims, the undiminished vigour with which he urges everyone else on, and his capacity for taking on burdens. We thank him for this Conference; we admire his zeal and I want to assure him not only of our admiration but also, perhaps at times, of our affection!

I have referred briefly to this paper which he has contributed to this Conference. I find it a remarkable paper. It has a rather prosaic heading. I personally would prefer to call it the musings or the philosophy of a bibliographer because it does go further than deal with mere technique. I commend that paper to you. No doubt it will receive its proper acclaim in due course but I was interested to see that he raised the old question as to whether all is worth knowing and whether it can be known - he concluded in the negative. I could remind him that Chesterton once dealt with the same topic in his usual style of contrasting the scholar who seeks to get his head into the heavens as against the one who seeks to get the heavens into his head; of course in the usual Chestertonian style he ended up by saying of the latter that it is his head that splits. Well you can apply that as you will but it is a relevant adage, I think, for those of you who are following this discipline, of which Dietrich writes so eloquently. And I think it is the scholar who is seeking merely to get his head into the heavens for whom you should be exercising these qualities of discernment and self discipline. As your Convenor has rightly stressed it is this scholar to whom you should aspire to be the handmaiden.

On behalf of AACOBS I welcome you to this Conference. I thank the Convenor and his Working Party for getting it underway and I have much pleasure in declaring it open.

SESSION 1

THE AUSTRALIAN NATIONAL BIBLIOGRAPHY

J. Flesch

Introduction

I do not propose, in a seminar devoted to national bibliographical services for the 1980s, to spend too much time looking backwards, but nonetheless, some understanding of the history of *Australian national bibliography (ANB)* should be useful before we start deciding how much more we want for the future.

The compilers of *ANB* never set their sights low, and from its beginnings as the *Annual catalogue of Australian publications* in 1936, the national bibliography of Australia has been much more than just a list. The earliest issues of the *Annual catalogue*, indeed, have some features which may surprise us in retrospect. Entries for titles not yet received in the National Library, the inclusion of entries for titles of Australian association published overseas, a directory of Australian publishers and statistics of Australian book production for the year are very early features. Periodicals and serial publications and government publications make an early appearance. So, too, do such aids to the general reader and librarian as the Dewey Decimal Classification number and entries under subject headings.

ANB attempts today, and has attempted since 1972, to do more for its readers than any similar service, both in terms of coverage and in terms of bibliographical detail. Each of these aspects will be discussed below. How well *ANB* achieves what it sets out to do, and what else could be required of it are the concerns of this paper.

The National Library of Australia expects *ANB* to be put to many and varied uses, and the availability of *ANB* data through the National Library's Catalogue Card Service, the Australian MARC Records Service (AMRS) and AUSINET has expanded the number of users of that data very considerably. This paper, however, is concerned primarily with a single aspect of this data: the printed *ANB*, available, at the time of writing, in four issues per month, the fourth issue cumulating entries from the preceding three and containing new entries, with annual cumulations. Two four-monthly cumulations have also been issued.

Scope

ANB lists

> books and pamphlets published in Australia within the current and preceding two years...Government publications, with the exception of individual acts, bills and ordinances are listed. So also are new serials titles and those issued with changes in bibliographical details... Pamphlets of under five pages are not included unless they form part of a series. No size limit applies to printed music. Overseas publications by Australians or with Australian subject content are included. Australian standards are excluded.[1]

The printed preface to *ANB* also makes mention of a number of publications of the National Library which complement and expand the coverage of *ANB*, as well as of the listings by the Standards Association of Australia, and this leaves us with two major questions regarding the scope of *ANB*: first, how well does it cover what it is supposed to include, and second, what more if anything, should it include?

The basis of *ANB* is material deposited in the National Library under the terms of the *Copyright Act*, and it is evident that, in the main, Australia's trade publishers are aware of their obligations and comply with them. The National Library maintains, in addition, an extensive blanket order with an Australian supplier, which is useful in capturing material which may have escaped the deposit net. Supply of first issues of Australian serials is also arranged through a local retail outlet, and the National Library's overseas suppliers are encouraged to send on approval any titles of Australian association.

The types of material which prove elusive will surprise no one who has tried to acquire them systematically for any Australian library: federal government publications which are not issued through the Australian Government Publishing Service (AGPS); publications of small interest groups, many of which publish once every blue moon and are unaware of their deposit obligations; publications of institutions such as university departments which may regard some of their output (such as research reports) as preliminary and for internal or limited circulation only; publications of state and local government departments; and publications of intergovernmental bodies and other instrumentalities where failure to deposit material may simply be the result of confusion over whose responsibility it was.

The problems here are partly of knowledge of and compliance with the deposit provisions of the *Copyright Act*, and partly of agreement on the definition of what constitutes a publication. The National Library is indefatigable in chasing up these elusive publications, but its success is by no means uniform.

Failure to get a title into *ANB* may be due to very short print runs which mean that by the time it was claimed, the title was no longer available. It may also be due to the fact that by the time these titles are identified, claimed and received they have fallen outside the three-year time-limit which *ANB* imposes on itself.

Another category of material for which *ANB* is far from comprehensive is serials. Far too often, because the first issue is either not received in time, or because it is not received at all, serial titles have been omitted from *ANB*. In the absence of any authoritative and comprehensive listing of Australian serials (and the out-of-date and highly selective *Current Australian serials* is certainly no substitute) this represents a most serious gap in our national bibliographic record.

Finally, the listing of overseas publications of Australian association is far from complete, because by the time titles are identified (often from other national bibliographies or from the out-of-date *Index translationum*) ordered and received, they fall outside the time-limits. This omission may at first seem trivial by comparison with the others mentioned and inclusion of overseas material may seem peripheral to the concerns of a national bibliography. The multicultural nature of Australian society, however, and the importance to librarians of a selection aid which will lead them to Australian literature comprehensible to their non-English speaking patrons should not be underestimated.

There seem to me to be three possible solutions to the problem of material which eludes the compilers of *ANB*. *ANB* could accept contributed entries for material not received in the National Library; it could attempt to borrow on inter-library loan titles which could then be catalogued from copies seen but not the property of the National Library; and it could expand the time-span of *ANB* to allow for tardy receipt of material.

It is my opinion that if the very high standard of bibliographic excellence which *ANB* has attained is to be maintained, the first possibility must be dismissed. *ANB* should not include cataloguing produced outside the national bibliographic centre. An intelligent and selective use of inter-library loan and some expansion of the time-span of *ANB* would, however, go a long way towards improving the comprehensiveness of *ANB* for monographs.

Serials, given the difficulty of borrowing them, remain a problem, and here I believe the solution lies in cataloguing the first issue received, rather than awaiting the first one published. Starting dates may, if deducible from internal evidence, be given in a note, and the goal of divorcing the content of the national bibliography from the contents of the National Library could be achieved.

Apart from the success of *ANB* in including everything it sets out to there remains the problem of material which is not at present covered by any list, and the question of whether *ANB* is the appropriate tool to control that part of the national information recource. Notable evaders of the national bibliographic net at present are sound recordings, prints and audiovisual material unaccompanied by print material.

I am inclined, despite the praiseworthy attempts of AACR2 to standardise bibliographical treatment of all types of library material, to feel that, like maps and motion pictures, these classes of material would best be served by their own listings. I regard it as axiomatic, however, that the national bibliographic agency should provide the nation with a comprehensive listing of this material, and should either political or economic reasons make separate listings impossible, then consideration should be given to extending the perhaps temporary hospitality of *ANB* to the homeless ones.

One minor comment on the omission of standards from *ANB* could also be made here. The reader is referred in the preface of all issues to lists available from the Standards Association of Australia, but must wait for an annual cumulation for *ANB* to tell him the address to write to for them. Any user of *ANB* who does not also have easy access to a Sydney telephone book might also be glad of the address.

Currency of *ANB*

If we turn from a consideration of what *ANB* includes to one of how quickly it includes it we are made aware that just as *ANB* is growing in size, there are some categories of material which are being listed faster.

Alan Walker, in an interesting paper prepared for the New South Wales Regional Committee of AACOBS in 1973,[2] commented adversely on the speed with which entries appeared in *ANB* and alluded, in passing, to a pilot project then being run with Butterworths (Australia) on Cataloguing in Publication (CIP). Since that time, the CIP program has been vastly extended, and the National Library published, in 1979,[3] a report of the effects of CIP on the currency of *ANB*. The report noted that "the percentage of titles in the 1978 *ANB* with a 1978 or post-1978, imprint was 44%, the highest since 1972". The announcement, in April 1978, that the AGPS had agreed to provide bibliographic data to *ANB* prior to publication for non-embargoed publications leads us to hope that although cataloguing information will still not be printed in the publications, some commonwealth government publications at any rate will be listed in *ANB* more promptly than before.

Questions of backlogs in cataloguing for *ANB* will always arise, especially in the area of non-commercial publications. In general, it is known that the National Library is, and has been for some time, operating in a situation of severe staffing restrictions. The impact of these restrictions has perhaps been felt less in the areas dealing with national bibliographical publications than elsewhere in the National Library, and the National Library itself gives the highest priority to the production of *ANB*. While these restrictions remain in force, however, it is unrealistic to expect any significant strengthening of the total *ANB* production team (including those whose responsibility it is to get the raw material into the National Library in the first place) to take place.

Bibliographical standard and content

The standard of bibliographical detail in *ANB* seems to one user at least beyond reproach. Mistakes do occur, of course, and cataloguers will always disagree with each other on individual details of subject analysis and rule interpretation, but as far as possible *ANB* aims to provide a complete bibliographical citation of the highest international standard and succeeds in doing so.

Apart from the standard bibliographical description, in which I include such features as the author, title, imprint, physical description of the work, series entry and ISBN, *ANB* offers the PRECIS string related to the index, an availability note in the case of obscure publishers, price whenever this can be determined, Dewey Decimal Classification number and Library of Congress subject headings. No other bibliography offers so much.

It may in fact be asked whether all this is really needed, but for two reasons I do not regard the question as valid. The first is that while this paper is principally concerned with the printed *ANB* and while this is certainly the first and in many cases the only bibliographical tool consulted by many users, it is an integral part of a much larger process of bibliographical control, and all the information provided in *ANB* relates to that. The contention that some information provided in *ANB* is not required by cataloguers or acquisitions personnel, for example, ignores the inter-relationship of all library processes. Provision of all possible information at the earliest possible stage makes it available at all later ones.

The second reason is simply the danger inherent in attempting any simplification of data for other users. The *ANB* philosophy of providing all possible information and leaving editorial decisions to the user is a far safer procedure.

The inclusion in *ANB* of CIP data, however, while it has tremendous advantages in terms of speed of listing, can involve the national bibliography in inaccuracy of a different type. Last-minute changes in publication policy and failure on the part of a publisher to report these changes to the national bibliographic agency can result in the appearance in *ANB* of CIP entries never related to the totally different final entries for the published works. One possible method of circumventing this problem (which can involve acquisitions librarians in time-consuming hunts for non-existent publications of apparently great interest) would be to exclude CIP entries from the annual cumulation of *ANB*, so that annual volumes became in fact records only of titles actually published.

Arrangement of *ANB*

Discussion about the adoption of a classified arrangement for the main sequence of *ANB* has been going on since the 1966 seminar on central cataloguing, with inconclusive results. It is notable, however, that in its 1977 *ANB* user survey, the National Library itself did not seek any opinion of the user community on this point. This may mean that the National Library was confident that a majority of users now favour the current arrangement, or that it is fixed for reasons of economy or convenience.

To some extent, the argument is becoming less important. Users lucky enough to be served by a library with access to the complete *ANB* file from 1972 on AUSINET, may regard the question of arrangement as irrelevant.

And, regardless of the accessibility of computer-based data, it is true that the national bibliography is unlikely to be approached by anyone without some degree of expertise in handling library materials. Users therefore requiring access to the citation for a particular known title are less interested in the arrangement of the bibliography than in the usefulness of its indexes. If the requirement is for a range of titles, a subject classified arrangement is likely to prove most useful to librarians and laymen alike.

The real point, then, is the choice of aids to access. *ANB* has opted for one familiar to many Australian library users, and one which is not so familiar. The Dewey Decimal Classification has the advantage of familiarity to almost all users of Australian school or public libraries. There are, of course, faults to be found in Dewey, among them the inadequate treatment of some subjects, unmanageably long numbers for others and some highly offensive judgements implicit in the treatment of some subjects.

Of all of these, the problem of overlong numbers is the one which will strike most users of *ANB* most often. Unfortunately the only solution seems to lie in training any user of any bibliography to come to her task equipped with pencil and paper. The length of the numbers is partly the result of the National Library's decision, mentioned above, to leave simplification to other libraries.

From the point of view of librarians or laymen requiring an overview of Australian publishing on a particular topic, the classification scheme, whatever its shortcomings, is a considerable help.

Indexing

For at least one of its aids to access, *ANB* has chosen a scheme which before 1972 was virtually unknown in Australia and, with the abandonment of Library of Congress subject headings and the adoption of PRECIS for its subject index, transformed itself into a tool likely to be intelligible even to users unfamiliar with the jargon and circumlocutions which LCSH had made almost second nature to the rest of us. The *Author, title and series index* to *ANB*, however, has had more than its share of problems. In May 1979, the National Library announced[4] some very welcome modifications to the index, involving the consistent placement of the Dewey Decimal Classification number, the provision of place of publication in all author/title/series entries, suppression of the imprint from entries under a series heading, and the removal of some duplicated punctuation marks and subfield codes from index entries.

All good news indeed, and even more welcome was the announcement that the fault in the sort key program which had plagued the index since its inception had been identified and eliminated. In fact, it took until the January 1980 issue for the "strange illogical order of entries under the heading Australia" to be corrected. Now, however, it really does seem to have been done, and finding official publications through the index has become logical and relatively easy. One oddity which still remains, however, is the filing of initials. Any user consulting *ANB* under A.N.U. is as likely to look for it between A.A.I.C. and *Abacus* as between *Annual reports of Commonwealth departments*...and *Apostasy or apologetics*, and should find a reference in both positions.

The lack of any indication at the head of the page, of which index one has turned up is a continuing barrier to easy use of *ANB*, and one which one would not expect to be too difficult to remove. With that added aid to retrieval, I think *ANB* would become as user-friendly as one could reasonably expect of what is by its very nature a complex bibliographical tool.

Form and frequency of *ANB*

A recent issue of *Cataloguing Australia* mentioned briefly some possible changes in the publishing frequency and form of *ANB*:

> In order to minimise subscription increases for *ANB* and to offset the rising costs of producing a printed full service of *ANB* the Library is investigating the possibility of offering microfiche options for larger cumulations. A microfiche edition of the 4 monthly cumulation is likely to replace the hard copy edition in 1980.[5]

By the time this Conference takes place, this change may already have been implemented, and one may well feel disturbed that this was done with so little consultation and that warning of the change was given to some *ANB* users only.

Any change in the form of frequency of the national bibliography has wide repercussions. Cataloguing personnel may be less affected than lay readers or reference staff, who are much less likely to view this particular change with indifference, even if economic considerations eventually compel their acquiescence.

In May 1977 the National Library asked *ANB* subscribers; "Would you be willing, in the interests of economy, to use *ANB* cumulations in microfiche?" Of 417 libraries, 44 per cent were willing, 45 per cent were not, and 11 per cent did not answer the question. The position may have changed by now, and we must note that no particular cumulation was specified in the question, but I suggest that on the basis of that information, *ANB* does not have decisive approval from its users for a change in form.

Use of *ANB*

We have a considerable body of information on the use of *ANB* as a result of the 1977 User Survey. At the time of writing the results have not yet been published, although they are expected to be by the date of this Conference, so I must here record my indebtedness to the National Library for letting me have prepublication copies of the proposed article in *ROD news*, the detailed tables on the survey and an analysis of *ANB* recipients.

In general, we must note the concentration in the 1977 survey on librarians' reactions to *ANB*. We need some information, too, on how it is viewed by the lay user.

From the experience of one library, for instance, it is possible to assert that undergraduates and academic staff alike find *Australian government publications (AGP)* much more manageable than *ANB* but that they are not nearly as repelled by the latter as they are by *Science citation index (SCI)*. Before this sort of information can be of any use, however, we need to determine whether the experience of one library is common to several. We need also to know whether the difficulties which these users find with *ANB* can be eliminated, or whether they are, as I suspect, a necessary concomitant of a large file, in which case the solutions must lie in our user education programs.

The National Library recently compiled a profile of *ANB* recipients. The figures which follow need some explanation. If two copies of *ANB* are sent to an identical address, this is counted as one recipient. If the address differs in any particular (e.g. a central library and a branch library or a serials department and a cataloguing department) each address is counted separately.

At the beginning of March 1980, the figures were:

16

Type of Library	No.	%
Overseas libraries	926	47
State and parliamentary libraries	23	1
University libraries	45	2
Public/regional libraries	164	8
State government (incl. Statutory authorities, courts and commissions) libraries	164	8
Federal government (incl. CSIRO and other statutory authorities, commissions and courts) libraries	175	9
School (incl. secondary & matriculation colleges and technical schools) libraries	155	8
CAEs (incl. institutes of technology, teachers' colleges and the State College of Victoria) libraries	84	4
TAFE (incl. technical and agricultural colleges) libraries	49	3
Publishers	38	2
Booksellers	17	1
Others (incl. libraries of associations, companies, research institutes, hospitals, church institutions, political parties, unions and private subscribers)	134	7
TOTAL	1974	100

In the 1977 survey, both overseas and Australian libraries were queried, but the responses as tabulated do not reflect the answers received from 61 overseas respondents. If these had been counted in, the overall response rate would have been slightly higher than 44 per cent. The responses as known at present, however, reflect only Australian reaction. For our purposes, in a conference entitled "Bibliographical services to the nation" this is enough to go on.

A summary of that reaction shows the following:

1. Use in selection

Most useful tool for Australian material	28%
Used, but other tools used equally	44%
Rarely used	24%

The issue most commonly used in selection was the monthly, followed, in descending order, by the weekly, four-monthly and annual.

2. Use in cataloguing

Most important cataloguing tool for Australian material	42%
Used, but other tools used equally	24%
Other NLA cataloguing services used	9%

The remaining 24 per cent did not specify their source(s) of cataloguing information. The issue most commonly used in cataloguing was the four-monthly, followed by the annual, the monthly and the weekly.

3. Use as a bibliographic reference

Most important bibliographical reference tool for Aust. material	35%
Used, but other tools used equally	51%
Rarely used	9%

The issue most commonly used for bibliographic reference was the annual, followed by the four-monthly, the monthly and the weekly. 86 per cent found the inclusion of overseas material useful, and 76 per cent found *ANB* useful for subject searching.

4. Subscription options

No modification acceptable	12%
Fortnightly sufficient	22%
Monthly sufficient	44%

It must be emphasised that this is the barest summary of the survey, and interested readers are urged to obtain the full tables if they have not already done so.

What we may want to think about now is how other developments have affected the importance of *ANB* for various aspects of library work. The announcement of changes to *ANB* in *Cataloguing Australia* suggests that the compilers still see *ANB* primarily as a cataloguing aid. I am not sure that the 1977 survey was designed to investigate that view, yet Alan Walker, in his paper cited earlier, was convinced that it was not correct.

There is, it seems to me, room for another, differently-oriented survey. Even if it could not be done as comprehensively as the 1977 one, a sampling of libraries of different types could, I think reveal some interesting trends.

ANB for the 1980s

Some of the questions of what more we might demand of *ANB* were implicitly answered in the first part of this paper dealing with the present scope of the bibliography. With the ever-increasing importance of non-print media, for example, it is imperative that there be a greater degree of bibliographic control of sound recordings, tape/slide presentations and pictorial materials.

The increasing complexity of government concerns and the growth of government influence on daily life require information on government activity - federal, state and local - to be made as accessible as possible.

The availability of *ANB* data in machine-readable form must not be allowed to blind us to the continuing importance of an up-to-date, comprehensive printed national bibliography. In the many Australian communities still not adequately served by "traditional" libraries, the falling costs of computer-based services are sadly irrelevant, and their dependence on the bibliographical information provided by *ANB* may be expected to grow as they become aware of what it can provide. The advent of international publishing may be expected to have an increasing effect on national bibliography. It will become harder and harder to decide what truly constitutes an Australian publication. While I would not particularly encourage any widening of the already extensive scope of *ANB*, I am not sure that this need concern us unduly. The inclusion of a few strictly non-Australian titles in our national bibliography would be more than compensated for if we could be certain that the entire publishing output of the nation was in fact listed there.

RECOMMENDATIONS

1. That entries be included in *ANB* for monographs not acquired by the National Library, provided they have been sighted by the *ANB* cataloguers.

2. That the time-span of *ANB* be extended from 3 to 5 years. i.e. current year minus 4 instead of current year minus 2.

3. That new serials be listed in *ANB* from the first issue received in the National Library, regardless of whether it is the first published.

4. That the National Library be asked either to expand the coverage of *ANB* to include sound recordings, audio-visual material not accompanied by print, and prints, or to produce separate listings of these.

5. That the address of the Standards Association of Australia be given in the Preface of each issue of *ANB*.

6. That CIP entries be omitted from annual cumulations of *ANB*.

7. That the *ANB Author, title and series index* include references from initials filed as letters as well as from initials filed as a word.

8. That each page of each index be identified at the head.

9. That *ANB* users at large be consulted before any changes in *ANB* frequency or format are implemented.

10. That a limited survey be undertaken on the relative importance of *ANB* in various library situations, taking into account non-librarian use.

References

1. *Australian national bibliography* 1972.

2. Australian Advisory Council on Bibliographical Services. New South Wales Regional Committee. *Concepts of Australian national bibliography: papers prepared for a round table discussion at the University of New South Wales on 29th October 1973.* [Sydney] Published by the Library of New South Wales on behalf of the New South Wales Regional Committee of AACOBS, 1974.

3. *Rod news.* no.1. June 1979.

4. National Library of Australia. *For information* 197/79 1 May 1979.

5. Fullerton, Jan. 'News from the National Library of Australia'. *Cataloguing Australia* 5(3): 2-4, July/September 1979.

21

Introductory remarks by J. Flesch

One of the nice things about beginning this Conference with a consideration of *ANB* is that it gets us off to a good up-beat start. *ANB* is something about which Australian librarians can justly be proud and I want to say at the outset that when I was writing my paper, one of the first things to strike me was how comparatively flimsy some of my criticisms seemed beside the very substantial achievements of the bibliography.

I have considered *ANB* under the following headings: scope, currency, bibliographical standard and content, arrangement, indexing, form, frequency and use.

As far as scope is concerned material which does not get into *ANB* falls broadly into two categories. There is the material which compilers do not learn about at all and then there is the material which is excluded because of its form. I have suggested attacking the first problem by an extension of the time span of *ANB* which would allow more time for chasing up elusive material - i.e. an expansion of this year minus two to this year minus three; the inclusion of serials from the first issue received in the National Library; and the use of inter-library loan for material which is no longer available by the time it is claimed by the National Library.

The second problem is that of material excluded because of its form. I am not of the opinion that it would be best listed in *ANB* but until a separate national listing can be produced it should be listed in some national bibliographic tool and *ANB* would seem the most appropriate one for the interim.

The currency of *ANB* has been greatly improved over the last few years - partly because of the growth of the CIP program. The staff ceiling, however, under which the National Library is obliged to operate, must have an effect on the currency of *ANB* whether in the actual preparation of bibliographic entries or in the earlier acquisition area.

In essence the bibliographical standards seem to me beyond reproach. *ANB* seeks to provide the user with all possible information at the earliest time in accordance with scrupulously observed international standards. This necessarily means that some of the information is fairly complex. However, the solution to this seems to me to lie less in simplifying the bibliography than in educating the users.

The exclusion of CIP entries from the annual cumulation of *ANB* is one definite suggestion I would make. At some point the national bibliography should be a record of what has been published and the annual volume seems an appropriate place for the purge.

I have suggested in my paper that the arrangement of *ANB* is finally less important than the keys to it. These now seem to be working satisfactorily with minor amendments which I have suggested in the paper regarding references from initials and indexing headings to index pages.

There is some evidence that Australian librarians would be prepared to accept some changes in physical form to microfiche for some cumulations and the frequency to fortnightly instead of weekly, but I would suggest fairly strongly that the National Library does not yet have a mandate from its user population for changes in either. If we are looking at the use of *ANB*, there is evidence to suggest that the printed *ANB* is of relative less importance as a cataloguing aid than as a reference or acquisition tool. This makes it, I have argued, especially important that any changes to *ANB*, be discussed not only with the cataloguers of Australia but also with other librarians and the lay readers with whom they are in contact. I have ended the paper by suggesting the possibility of another survey of *ANB* use - one which might let us know more accurately what *ANB* is used for now in the light of changed library technology and the changes we can expect or hope for in the 1980s.

Prepared response by J. Macallister

It is difficult to be critical of the *ANB* - a work which is so professionally prepared and one on which many of us and the institutions which we represent depend so heavily. *ANB* and the services which flow from its compilation, are central to so many library functions in Australia.

In responding to Miss Flesch's paper, we should firstly sort out what priorities we want the National Library of Australia to respond to, in *ANBs* production. We are told by Miss Flesch that:

> *ANB* attempts today..., to do more for its readers than any similar service, both in terms of coverage and in terms of bibliographical detail.

Again we are told later:

> The National Library of Australia expects *ANB* to be put to many and varied uses... [and] has expanded the number of users of that data very considerably.

Figures from the 1977 survey are given on pages 8 and 9 of the paper. These indicate there is heavy use in Australian libraries, particularly for selection, cataloguing and bibliographic reference.

As this Conference is concerned with bibliographical services during the next decade it might be useful first to look at the production of *ANB* purely as a bibliography, try to specify the purpose and the desirable criteria of the bibliography, and then, if the purposes are achieved, look at the use of the bibliography and the data compiled from it, to see what other services can be provided without hindering the work's main purposes. What I am asking is, I suppose, whether our major demand or priority is the production of a national bibliography, or whether it is the production of a cataloguing, selection or some other tool with, as Miss Flesch says:

> the standard of bibliographical detail...beyond reproach or to provide a complete bibliographical citation of the highest international standard?

Can we define what we believe to be the primary purpose of *ANB?* To start discussion may I suggest it is to make the Australian community, or that part which so wishes, aware of what is published in Australia, by Australians and about Australia no matter where it is published. We should then define the expected coverage. Once this is done, the other requirements of a national bibliography may be simple to state in general terms.

Are the requirements in priority order?

1. To ensure coverage is as complete as possible
2. To describe effectively, the material included
3. Indicate where the material is available
   (a) on publication (if the bibliography is current)
   (b) in the future (if part of its purpose is for retrospective searching) the union catalogue
4. Organize the bibliography for effective retrieval of information
5. Currency of the bibliography

Miss Flesch raises the problem of coverage on page 2 (para. 1) when she asks: "how well does it cover what it is supposed to include and second, what more if anything, should it include"?

The coverage of *ANB* is rightly dependent on the material deposited in the National Library under the Copyright Act, and through the National Library's blanket orders both local and overseas. We are told by Miss Flesch that the coverage is incomplete basically for two general reasons:

1. some material proves to be elusive,
2. some groups of material are excluded by imperious decision makers,
   e.g.
   (a) if "they have fallen outside the three-year time limit which *ANB* imposes on itself",
   (b) serials "because the first issue is either not received in time, or because it is not received at all",
   (c) overseas publications which "fall outside the time-limits",
   (d) standards issued by the Standards Association of Australia.

For the first of these reasons I have great sympathy.

It is very difficult to collect in many areas, and in some areas it is impossible to achieve comprehensive coverage within the one institution. Some gains might be achieved if the National Library were not so concerned with in-house perfection, and "its go-it alone policy", which is reflected in the paper, but were prepared in some co-operative spirit or even method to accept information or even data from other libraries such as those serving universities, states, CAE's, firms or the public in general.

This refers to Recommendation 1: "that entries be included in *ANB* for monographs not acquired by the National Library". This I can agree with but then the Recommendation finishes "provided they have been sighted by the ANB cataloguers". The question arises, for what purpose? To guarantee its existence, to guarantee it is Australian, to guarantee the quality of cataloguing? And the overriding problem remains: is the *ANB* a national bibliography or is it a centralized cataloguing tool of "very high standard of bibliographic excellence"? (Page 3 , para. 3)

In any case are we not somewhere near the stage in the 1980's where there is a real possibility of a co-operative shared cataloguing system and could not this be used in some way to expand the coverage of *ANB?* For the second area, those groups of material which are excluded by decision, I can have little sympathy.

Of course, I want to have my national bibliography as current as possible. However, there are occasions when this is just not possible. If, as I believe, completeness is the principal requirement of a national bibliography, I can only applaud Recommendation 2:

> That the time-span of *ANB* be extended from 3 to 5 years.

At the same time I might ask why only five years? Similarly with Recommendation 3:

> That new serials be listed in *ANB* from the first issue received in the National Library, regardless of whether it is the first published.

Nevertheless, the National Library might consider, for the sake of completeness and currency, accepting for inclusion in *ANB*, data from some "respectable" libraries, about serials which are not held in the National Library or listed in *ANB*.

I am mystified about the reasons for excluding Australian standards from the national bibliography. I am aware that the Standards Association has a very good list of its publications, and that it has other good sales publications and methods. It would cause more work to National Library cataloguers if these were included and this could be a problem. But doesn't the CSIRO have quite acceptable bibliographical control of its publications, and are not the publications of the CSIRO included in *ANB?* What is the difference? I would therefore suggest that Recommendation 5 in the paper be altered to read "That the publications of the Standards Association of Australia be listed in *ANB*".

Recommendation 4 of the paper seems quite reasonable to me, providing the scope of such listings is adequately defined. There might also be implications for the Australian Copyright Act if the preparation of such listings were to be based on the holdings of the National Library. I expect these listings might be of more use to the community if they were published separately from *ANB*, and probably sound recordings, depending on the definition published separately from audio-visual materials

Recommendation 6 "That CIP entries be omitted from annual cumulations of *ANB*" raises the question of whether CIP entries should be listed in the national bibliography at all. This service is not related to the production of a national bibliography, but is provided for the use of selection librarians, acquisitions librarians and to some extent cataloguers. But these people are the people who are most critical of the provision of CIP entries. It is said the information is scanty, "1 vol" means little no price is given and that it is often the source of unwanted duplication. This is an area where the bibliography is perhaps being misused, if a bibliography is a list of published items. If I may quote out of context D.H. Borchardt's paper (page 184)"that a national bibliography cannot be all things to all men". Maybe, the concept of CIP should be re-examined in the light of the development of on-line shared cataloguing systems, and the development of regional and national data bases. If these endeavours can be used to their best advantage, maybe a better coverage, an effective description and more timely publication could be achieved through co-operative action, than reliance on the resources of one institution.

There seems little to quibble about in Recommendation 7, 8 and 9, but in its present form it is difficult to agree wholeheartedly with Recommendation 10. Surveys can be very useful means of finding out information, but they require great expertise in survey technique. To inquire "on the relative importance of *ANB* in various library situations" whether or not one takes "into account non-librarian use", seems somewhat simplistic, but, no doubt, it is intended that this Recommendation should be further developed, as indicated on page 9 when Miss Flesch writes "There is....room for another, differently-oriented survey".

Discussions with the heavier users of *ANB* in the State Library of New South Wales revealed many minor criticisms. However, when many of these were examined in more detail these users were surprised at recent improvements.

Some criticisms reported to me, which still remain and which affect performance and at times tempers, are:

1. the lack, on occasion, of minor publishers' addresses
2. the failure to explain why many items published abroad are listed.
   Examples of notes are taken from *NZNB* e.g.

   > "Author is New Zealander", "Novel set in Otago"
   > "Mystery tale with New Zealand characters", based
   > upon diaries kept by early New Zealand emigrants...."
   > "New Zealand Technology"
3. the irritating repetition of entries, both within issues, for the convenience of the classified cataloguer, and between issues. Would it be better to imitate *BNB* and cumulate only indexes in the monthly issues?
4. reasons for the revision of entries are given sometimes; could these be given each time an entry is revised?

General discussion

A number of issues were raised in the discussion which followed.

E. Groenewegen requested that the following recommendation be added to those contained in Miss Flesch's paper:

> That the National Library be encouraged to make *ANB* available to Australian libraries in machine readable form and not simply on a record by record basis through the present AMRS service.

Commenting on the recommendation, Mr Groenewegen pointed out that a number of organizations, including CAVAL, were interested in the availability of such a service which, in his view, would attract a very high use rate for shared cataloguing purposes. This proposal was supported by Miss Flesch although she intimated that there were some legal problems involved in this area.

On the question of including non-print media in *ANB*, J. Evans, representing the Audiovisual Services Committee of the LAA, suggested that the national bibliographic data base be expanded to include records of works in all media in the one data base. He advised participants that the British Library had undertaken a pilot study on this question and had released an experimental edition of the British Library's catalogue on non-book materials. It was suggested that the National Library should draw on this experience in any efforts to implement Recommendation 4.

There was considerable discussion from the floor on the practicalities and desirability of including the publications of the Standards Association of Australia in *ANB*. The view was expressed by M. Cameron that there were many instances when individuals were unaware that their information needs could be met by a particular standard. The inclusion of the Association's standards in *ANB* would therefore be a valuable addition to the bibliography's coverage. Referring to the question of whether the inclusion of standards would unduly increase the size of the bibliography, I. Royal informed the audience that the reason standards had not been included was not the size of the current intake but the overwhelming task of the required retrospective cataloguing effort. It was pointed out that the current intake of standards was approximately 200 per year and that the issue was under consideration. J. Macallister stressed that there was an important principle involved in this area - if the national bibliography does not include all material published in Australia it becomes a selective bibliography and not a true national bibliography. Standards constitute an essential part of Australian publishing, and he commented that it was interesting to note that while some standards (e.g. those issued by Australian Petroleum Institute and by other bodies) are included, those promulgated by our main standards organization were not listed. Concluding his remarks, Mr Macallister stated that he saw no reasons, other than those of an in-house nature, why this important category of publication should not be covered comprehensively by *ANB*.

Discussion then centred on the problems involved in covering works published overseas and related to Australia. In raising this issue, J. Flesch drew attention to the Unesco guidelines for national bibliographic agencies and the national bibliography published under the General Information Program in December 1979. These guidelines make specific reference to such publications as a legitimate part of national bibliography and suggest that national bibliographic agencies should expand their coverage to include this material which should be identified in some way.

It was pointed out that the question needed consideration in the light of the use made of national bibliography. For example, a public library which served a large non-English speaking population would use *ANB* to identify translations of Australian literature in order to introduce migrants to Australia in a literature which they could understand. The other reason for including these publications was to assist researchers - it was for instance an interesting sociological study in itself to identify which Australian authors are translated and published overseas.

In response to these remarks, a number of speakers queried the value of expending resources on identifying items of Australian association when it is known that the coverage of publications produced in Australia is incomplete. It was queried whether it might not be more efficacious to attempt an improvement of the coverage of purely "Australian" publications prior to attempting a more comprehensive coverage of Australian association material.

This view was repudiated by S. Routh who supported attempts to include relevant material which was published overseas. Even though one could be confident that the coverage of such material was far from comprehensive, he argued that some listing is better than no listing at all. He indicated that many people use *ANB* as their sole bibliography and reference aid, and for them such entries are of great value.

I. Royal informed the audience that it was obviously difficult to ascertain how comprehensive *ANB* is with regard to coverage of material published overseas and which was related in one way or another to Australia. It was noted that such material was identified through the National Library's blanket order scheme while other relevant entries were located through scanning *BNB* and *Index translationum*.

Responding to these remarks, J. Flesch commented that scanning *Index translationum* was a difficult exercise because it involved examining every entry in the *Index*. Furthermore by the time much of this material was identified and ordered it was out-of-print and could therefore not be readily acquired by the National Library nor listed in *ANB*.

Participants then turned their attention to the specific recommendations contained in the paper. In discussing Recommendation 1 it was urged that entries contributed by outside libraries be included in *ANB*. This was rejected by J. Flesch who emphasized the need for one centralized authority.

Responding to another suggestion that there be no time limit for including material in *ANB* (Recommendation 2), I. Royal stressed that the bibliography was essentially a chronological cumulation and that users were unlikely to search for entries which they did not expect to locate in the cumulations. He pointed out that a single cumulated file of *ANB* does not exist.

Commenting on Recommendations 9 and 10, H. Bryan stressed that the National Library was anxious to consult users about proposed changes to *ANB*. stressed that while it was difficult to obtain complete consumer reaction, the National Library will give users more lead time before implementing changes.

In closing the session, the Chairman advised participants that the recommendations contained in the paper, including those which had been proposed during the discussion, would be transmitted through AACOBS to the National Library.

SESSION 1

THE AUSTRALIAN NATIONAL BIBLIOGRAPHY

Paper by J. Flesch - Principal Librarian (Collections)
Baillieu Library, University of Melbourne

Prepared response by J. Macallister - Assistant State Librarian,
State Library of New South Wales

Chairman of Session - D.H. Borchardt, Chief Librarian,
La Trobe University

Principal participants in General discussion

H. Bryan - Director-General, National Library of Australia

M. Cameron - Chief Librarian, Deakin University

J. Evans - Australian National University

H. Groenewegen - Executive Director, CAVAL Ltd

I. Royal - Chief Cataloguer, ANB, National Library of Australia

S. Routh - Senior Principal Librarian, Reference Services,
University of Queensland

SESSION 2

THE BIBLIOGRAPHICAL CONTROL OF AUSTRALIAN GOVERNMENT PUBLICATIONS

Report to the Working Party on Bibliography of the
Australian Advisory Council on Bibliographical Services

A. E. Miller

September 1979

INTRODUCTION

At the end of 1976 Standing Committee of AACOBS resolved to establish a Task Force on Government Publications, to work in conjunction with the Working Party on Bibliography and to be co-ordinated by Mr D.H. Borchardt.

The responsibilities of the Task Force were twofold: 1) to establish the present state of bibliographic control of Australian government publications, and 2) to pinpoint gaps and to recommend improvements in such control. Members were requested to list and evaluate existing guides to government administration, bibliographies and indexes, and secondly, to recommend what was required: a) to improve existing lists, and b) to cover lacunae in bibliographic services. Publications of the federal government, its territories, state and local government, plus intergovernmental publications were all to be considered.

The replies contained comments on existing federal and state aids, but only those from New South Wales and Western Australia referred to local or intergovernmental publications, and attempted to identify gaps. Much useful information has been gathered since as background for the book *Australian official publications* edited by D.H. Borchardt and due for publication later this year, and to that I have added a number of comments of my own on deficiencies of which I am aware, and I have taken the liberty of making a number of recommendations. A summary of the recommendations is attached at the end of this Report.

I have grouped bibliographies and indexes into several major categories:

(a) Government printer/publisher lists
(b) Library bibliographies
(c) Parliamentary paper indexes
(d) Retrospective lists
(e) Other: departmental lists, lists in annual reports.

One useful by-product of the work of the Task Force has been the identification of additional material for the second edition of *Government publications of Australia: a list of lists*, which has been compiled by the Sub-Committee on Government Publications of the Victorian Regional Committee of AACOBS, and has recently been published by the Library Council of Victoria.

While I was working on this project and discussing it with colleagues the point was raised that my comments make no reference to the ultimate user - John Citizen - and that we should bear him in mind and avoid as much as possible the creation of bibliographic tools for bibliographers pure or applied. However, starting from the premise that librarians are in many cases, at least in the first instance, intermediaries for John Citizen, I consider that it is essential for these lists to be of high quality and sophistication; clearly they will be geared to and more easily interpreted by the librarian, but this does not exclude use by those outside the profession. John Citizen, although he may initially find these lists strange, will also need lists of a high standard if he wishes to pursue any research interests.

GOVERNMENT PRINTER/PUBLISHER LISTS

Generally speaking, lists by Australian government printers/publishers record material which they have printed or published, and have available for sale, with the sole exception of the various lists produced by the Australian Government Publishing Service (AGPS). In terms of bibliographical control at source, it is necessary to consider three categories of material, two of which are directly linked with the government printer/publisher: firstly, the material which government printers themselves print and sell; secondly, the material which they print for departments and authorities, but do not sell (and therefore do not list) plus any material which is channelled through them but which they do not print themselves. Clearly there would be no direct gain to government printers in listing material which they do not sell; however, although it may be unrealistic to expect the government printer/publisher to bear the cost of listing this additional material, it can justifiably be claimed that the government has a responsibility to the public to help make accessible these documents on which public money is being spent. The third and more contentious group of publications, which must be considered, is that for which the government printer/publisher has no responsibility whatsoever i.e. publications produced quite independently from the government printer by a government agency.

Thus it is necessary to know for each jurisdiction, what responsibilities the government printer has. Theoretically it would appear to be much easier to improve the bibliographical control in N.S.W. or Victoria, where all departmental publications are required to be either printed by or channelled through the government printer, than for example in Queensland, where departments and statutory authorities are not compelled to use the services of the Government Printer. In N.S.W. and Victoria, the government printers presumably have a record of what is being published by departments, and it would no doubt be possible to request departments to submit a copy of their publications to the respective government printer for listing, using their records as a check on defaulters.

Federal

As far as the Commonwealth is concerned, AGPS maintains that all departments and those statutory authorities whose staff are employed under the *Public Service Act* are required by a Cabinet decision to channel all their publishing through the AGPS. The application of this ruling is far from clear and the AGPS itself is unable to be precise as to which authorities fall into this category. The report of the enquiry by the Joint Committee on Publications of the federal Parliament into the AGPS in 1978 - *The Australian Government Publishing Service and its role in Commonwealth printing and publishing 1964-1978* - also comments on the lack of clear cut policy regarding the extent to which statutory authorities are required to use AGPS facilities. Two statutory authorities whose staff are employed under the *Public Service Act* are the Australian Bureau of Statistics, which does most of its own publishing, and the National Library, which does all of its own publishing. This is clearly quite in order under the *Australian Bureau of Statistics Act* and the *National Library Act*. It is highly desirable that these guidelines be clarified, so that, amongst other things, one will know whether to approach AGPS or the author agency in the first instance. "Independent" statutory authorities are free to use the services of the AGPS if they so choose.

It is recommended that the AGPS be asked to spell out the names of those statutory authorities for whose publishing it is responsible. (Recommendation 1)

The lists issued by the AGPS have improved beyond recognition since the middle of 1976. Prior to this the AGPS issued only a monthly list - no weekly list, no annual cumulation, no progressive list on microfiche; it did not attempt to list all AGPS publications and in particular its free publications were excluded as a category; it included non-AGPS federal publications, but no imprint was given for any of the publications listed, making it impossible to differentiate between items which the AGPS published, and those which were published by the author agency itself - a failure which quite naturally caused major problems in trying to assess and monitor the AGPS deposit scheme. The list, formatwise, was a miserable little thing, and its title was identical to that of a major bibliography of the National Library, *Australian government publications*, which caused some confusion. All these defects have been rectified, and the improvements are gratefully acknowledged.

Nevertheless, there is still room for improvement. Currently the lists appear in four versions. The first list to appear is the *Weekly list of government publications**; it records all AGPS publications released during the week, priced and free; it does not include any non-AGPS publications. It has a circulation of about 3000 and is sent free of charge to non-trading libraries, government and semi-government authorities, secondary schools and tertiary institutions. It is arranged by 3 major groups: 1) Parliamentary titles - a) Hansard b) Bills c) Parliamentary papers d) Notice papers e) Votes f) Journals; 2) Legislation - a) Acts b) Statutory rules c) ACT ordinances d) ACT regulations; 3) Departmental titles - a) Monographs - i.e. monographs, monographs in series and annuals b) Serials c) Gazettes. Parliamentary papers are arranged in numerical order and the legislation is in four alphabetical sequences.

In the monograph section, while the entry is generally by title, some are entered under the name of the series title, e.g. *Treaty series*, while a few are entered under the name of the corporate body, e.g. 'Senate: Standing Committee on Social Welfare. *Through a glass, darkly*' and 'Parliament: Joint Committee on Foreign Affairs and Defence: Sub-Committee on Territorial Boundaries. *Torres Strait treaty: report and appendixes*'. Entries for annual reports are in the form '*Department of Trade and Resources annual report, 1978-79*' and '*Export Development*

---

*From January 1980 this title was changed to *Commonwealth publications: official list*.

32

Grant Board annual report 4th, 1978-79'. The arrangement is alphabetical by the first word of the entry and the mixed form of entry makes the arrangement confusing, to say the least. The bibliographic description in the monograph section includes title, corporate author, personal author/editor/chairman, series and imprint; it does not show pagination, size or ISBN.

The *Monthly list of publications placed on sale** has a circulation of about 13,000 to booksellers, libraries, organisations and individuals, and is the main promotion vehicle of the AGPS. It is also distributed free of charge. It is a cumulation of the sales items listed in the *Weekly list*, using the same arrangement, but entries include pagination, size and ISBN. It also includes, in a separate section, descriptive blurbs about some 30-40 items which the AGPS considers will be of general interest. In addition, it lists 'Other Commonwealth Government Publications', i.e. a small number of publications of statutory authorities which AGPS has placed on sale, some 'Other Australian Publications' i.e. commercial publications which relate to Australia, in particular Australian politics and government, and 'Overseas Publications' i.e. a selection of publications of three overseas countries and three international organisations for which the AGPS is a sales agent. There is no index, nor are there any references from alternative forms of entry.

The *Cumulative list of government publications* is an annual cumulation of the *Weekly list* i.e. it lists AGPS publications, priced and free, but no other Australian government publications. The arrangement is the same as the *Weekly list*; however, within the 'monograph' section, although the arrangement described above is retained, there are references from: personal authors, editors, chairmen, corporate authors, series and subjects. Problems of arrangement, due to the form of entry, are reduced by this multiple access. The *Cumulative list* is not distributed free of charge but is available for sale.

The fourth and invaluable form in which AGPS publications are recorded is the *AGPS fortnightly catalogue* on microfiche, which is cumulative from July 1976. It is available on subscription on a fortnightly, monthly or quarterly basis. Each fiche costs $1 and the number of fiche now amounts to 11. The microfiche catalogue lists priced and free AGPS publications: 'Parliamentary titles' - only recent issues of Hansard, Notice papers, Votes and Journals, but a complete run of Parliamentary papers in numerical order; and 'Departmental titles'. The arrangement within the 'Monograph' section of 'Departmental titles' is the same as the *Cumulative list* except that the references are replaced by unit entries, which makes quick identification of an item possible. AGPS publications excluded from the microfiche list are Bills and legislation. However, 'Other Commonwealth Government publications', 'Other Australian publications' and 'Overseas publications' are included.

The microfiche edition was produced for use in the various AGPS bookshops throughout Australia. However, it is reported that this is not proving a success in the shops, and thus its existence is in some jeopardy. It is possible, therefore, that it will be discontinued or that its scope will be reduced. For reasons unknown the AGPS has done remarkably little to promote the microfiche edition among the library profession.

---

*From January 1980 this title was changed to *Monthly catalogue of publications placed on sale.*

As a reference tool for libraries with an interest in a substantial collection of Australian government publications, it is quite invaluable. At La Trobe University the microfiche edition is heavily used, and well justifies the cost of $11 per month. It is particularly useful for quick access to the current Parliamentary papers, until such time as the proof edition of the *Index to the papers presented to Parliament* becomes available. It is also of use for ordering purposes, in that items which are 'out of print' or 'out of stock' are listed and so designated.

Also of considerable reference use is the note in the monograph section "also published as Pp session ... no ..." This cannot appear in the *Monthly list*, and only to a partial degree in the *Cumulative list*, because although the bibliographic descriptions are updated where appropriate, the parliamentary paper version is usually issued some time after the "departmental" version.

A small percentage of AGPS publications continues to escape control in these lists, due apparently to some breakdown in communication between the Printing and Publishing Branches; however, when specific items have been pointed out as missing they are included subsequently in later editions. AGPS is unable to explain the cause of these omissions but is endeavouring to identify and close up the loopholes. This must be rectified as quickly as possible.

For reasons which have not been satisfactorily explained, there are some titles which are printed by the Government Printer, but which do not bear the AGPS imprint, and which according to the AGPS are not AGPS publications; an example is the Patent Office's *Australian official journal of patents, trademarks and designs*. Given that the Government Printer currently forms part of the AGPS, one would have expected to find this title listed by the AGPS. Another title which similarly bears the mark of the Government Printer but not AGPS is Daily Hansard, but this is included in the lists.

There appear to be good reasons for the AGPS to widen the scope of its lists, in order to increase the bibliographical control at source, and for these lists to include virtually all Commonwealth government publications, AGPS and non-AGPS, priced and free, with an indication of the source of supply. The only categories of publications which the AGPS need not include would be those which are adequately covered by other catalogues, e.g. the publications of the ABS, and reference to these would meet the needs of serious users.

Recent discussions with Mr B.P. Shurman, Director of Publishing, AGPS, on the subject of listing those publications for whose publishing AGPS is in theory responsible, suggest that such a proposal is rather naive, and that in fact it is a "catch-22" situation. Since those departments and statutory authorities which are not publishing everything through the AGPS are deliberately avoiding to do so, they are unlikely to send copies to the AGPS for listing. The AGPS maintains that it follows up those departmental publications which it hears about and reprimands the author department. It is difficult to believe, however, that the AGPS is not turning a blind eye to a small proportion of this rule-breaking, e.g. the Department of Social Security's *Four-weekly summary of statistics*, which has been published in this way for many years, and many publications of the Bureau of Meteorology. Examples appear frequently in *Australian national bibliography* of departmental titles published by departments themselves, rather than by the AGPS. However, there would obviously be problems in achieving fully centralised listing at the source of departmental publications. There appears to be a need, therefore, for a tougher line to be taken with departments in order to ensure centralised publishing. One might have thought that a Cabinet decision would have been strong enough to have a binding effect, but apparently this is not so.

As far as the publications of the many statutory authorities are concerned, it is not suggested for one minute that an attempt be made at fully centralised publishing. The magnitude of such a proposal is demonstrated by the Senate Standing Committee on Finance and Government Operations, which in its *Statutory authorities of the Commonwealth: first report* (1979) identified 241 federal statutory authorities (of which only 198 were listed in the 1978 *Commonwealth government directory*). While it is obviously useful to the consumer for there to be centralised distribution of government publications, it is of greater importance for him to be able to obtain full details from one source and to be directed with precision to the source of supply. It is, therefore, not necessarily desirable to tighten centralised production or distribution, but to make a genuine attempt at centralised listing, whereby all departments and all statutory authorities would submit a copy of their publications to the AGPS for inclusion in a list, which contains clear indications of the source of supply.

The Erwin Committee recommended in 1964 that the proposed publishing office, i.e. the AGPS, should "publish ... a list of Commonwealth publications ... [and] publications of statutory authorities" (Para 166). In relation to the Commonwealth bodies operating outside the scope of the *Public Service Act* it was recommended that "each body shall advise the publishing office of the publications it has issued so that they may be adequately listed in the daily and monthly lists of Commonwealth publications published by that office." (Para 365b)

This was indeed attempted by the AGPS in the early 1970s. Departments which at that time had not been brought under the AGPS umbrella, and statutory authorities were asked to notify the AGPS of their publications so that a master record could be compiled (AGPS Circular no.8, 1970).[1] It is not recorded how successful the AGPS was in acquiring those documents. Mr Shurman said in August 1979 that a proposal made by the AGPS when it was first set up to list non-AGPS Commonwealth government publications, was rejected by the Public Service Board on the grounds that this was a function of the National Library.

To maintain that the listing of non-AGPS material is the responsibility of the National Library alone is open to argument. While in some respects duplication of effort would result, recording by a library is inevitably a slow process, especially when a higher degree of sophistication is necessary to cope with corporate headings and detailed subject entries. There are no readily available data for the time lag between production and listing of material in *ANB*; obviously the delay is great with *AGP*. At 19 September 1979, the 1978 cumulation which contains uniquely the entries for October - December 1978, has not yet been received.

The AGPS provides notification of its own material within a week or so of publication, and it is this sort of speed which is essential. Currency is of vital importance.

It is quite obvious that there would be problems in getting the material to the AGPS for listing. Presumably the AGPS would have the same problems which the National Library experiences, even though the latter has the backing of the *Copyright Act.* Yet, in the United States, where the federal output is many times greater than ours, a considerable amount of material not published by the Superintendent of Documents is recorded in the *Monthly catalog.* The statutory basis of this is to be found in the *United States Code* (Title 44, *Public printing and documents*):

> The Superintendent of Documents, at the close of each regular session of Congress, shall prepare and publish a comprehensive index of public documents, upon a plan approved by the Joint Committee on Printing. The Public Printer shall, immediately upon its publication, deliver to him a copy of every document printed by the Government Printing Office. The head of each executive department, independent agency and establishment of the Government shall deliver to him a copy of every document issued or published by the department, bureau, or office not confidential in character ... (Section 1710)

and

> On the first day of each month the Superintendent of Documents shall prepare a catalog of Government publications which shall show the documents printed during the preceding month, where obtainable, and the price... (Section 1711).

Instructions in the use of the *Monthly catalog* set out in the introduction say:

> Publications entered in this catalog that are for sale by the Superintendent of Documents are indicated by a 'for sale' statement in the text entries. Congressional publications which are not for sale may be obtained from the responsible Committee, or from the House or Senate Documents Room. Entries for publications sold by the NTIS include a statement to that effect. Unless otherwise indicated, publications are distributed by the issuing office which appears immediately before the publication date in each entry. Additional information necessary for procuring documents will appear above or within text entries.

Despite the mandatory provisions of Title 44, there appears to be a good deal of minor documentation which does not find its way to the Superintendent of Documents for inclusion in the *Monthly catalog.* A proportion of this is recorded in *Government reports, announcements and index.* There are the usual difficulties of classification particularly of ephemera.[2] However, a considerable proportion of the contents of the *Monthly catalog* is non-Sudoc material.

The Joint Committee on Publications in its report *The Australian Government Publishing Service and its role in Commonwealth printing and publishing 1964-1978* (6th Special report) 1978, recommended that "each publication produced by departments and statutory authorities be notified to AGPS upon its release, together with details as to the status of the document, whether it is for sale or free, and from where it can be obtained." (Para 19.3)

There appear to be several weaknesses in this recommendation. Firstly, notification alone to the AGPS would not be sufficient; it would be necessary to lodge a copy with the AGPS so that the cataloguer could sight the material and ensure consistency in descriptive cataloguing. The second problem, leaving aside the aforementioned publications which the AGPS should but does not publish, relates to those of statutory authorities which are not required to be published by the AGPS. On a strict interpretation of the AGPS's functions, as at present defined, the AGPS is required to publish and sell its own publications. It certainly lacks the resources to attempt bibliographical control of publications from which effort it will receive no financial gain. Any attempt to increase substantially the scope of the AGPS lists would require an approach to an authority higher than the AGPS, since additional funds for staff would presumably be required.

The evidence before us suggests that the task of bibliographic control is likely to become more difficult as time goes on, because the proportion of non-AGPS material may well increase. To quote from Eve Johansson's *Current British government publishing* (1978):

> [British] Government publishing has become a scattered activity, with government organisations, and offices within those organisations, publishing independently, and not availing themselves of the professional services of HMSO. It is estimated by the Bodleian Library in Oxford that under 20% of British government publications are now put out by HMSO.[3]

Figures for the current Australian output are not readily available, but given the constant developments in technology, it is likely that there will be considerably more in-house production of short runs of documents. If this eventuates, the bibliographical control of such material will become even harder, and strong measures will need to be taken to ensure some form of centralised control.

Recommendations regarding the various AGPS lists fall into several categories; they cover contents, arrangement, frequency and details included for each entry.

Contents

It is recommended that the AGPS be asked to include its own "non-publications" such as the Patent Office's *Australian official journal of patents, trademarks and designs* in its various lists. (R.2)

It is recommended that the AGPS be asked to include its free publications in the *Monthly list*. Granted that this list is designed to sell, it is frustrating for the user, when trying to identify an AGPS publication, to have to check not only 12 monthly issues but possibly 48 weekly issues as well. (R.3)

It is recommended that the AGPS be asked to carry forward such "Other Commonwealth Government Publications" as it lists into the *Cumulative list*. (R.4)

It is recommended that Bills and legislation be included in the microfiche catalogue at least for the current year, or until such time as specific lists or indexes appear e.g. *Cumulative list of bills and associated material*. (R.5)

It is recommended that the recommendation of the Joint Committee on Publications be strongly endorsed "that each publication produced by departments and statutory authorities be notified to AGPS upon its release, together with details as to the status of the document, whether it is for sale or free, and from where it can be obtained" but that the wording be amended so that "notified" reads "sent", and that the words "with the object of it being listed by AGPS" be added. However, to address this recommendation to AGPS would achieve little and steps should be taken for this issue to be addressed to a higher authority. (R.6)

Arrangement

It is recommended that AGPS be asked to consider the following arrangement of its monthly and cumulative lists: part I 'Parliamentary publications', retaining the numerical arrangement for Parliamentary papers; part II 'Legislation' - an alphabetical arrangement of Bills and a numerical arrangement of Acts and Statutory rules, ACT ordinances and Regulations; part III 'Gazettes'; part IV 'Departmental publications'.

Some radical changes are called for in Part IV. The basic arrangement should be by corporate body, along the lines of *Canadian government publications*; this would mean an amalgamation of departmental and statutory authority monographs and serials, priced and free, AGPS and non-AGPS, batched under the name of each department and statutory authority. There should be an index at the back to all four parts - including parliamentary publications and legislation - with entries by personal author, chairman, editor, title, series and subject. In the case of Parliamentary papers, the index should refer the user to both sequences. (R.7)

Frequency

The Erwin Committee recommended in 1964 "that the publishing office publish daily and monthly a list of the Commonwealth publications issued during the past 24 hours, or month, respectively" (Para 166 (a)). The Joint Committee on Publications, although endorsing the importance of listing, made no recommendations regarding frequency. A recommendation was made by the AACOBS Working Party on Information Resources (July 1977), and forwarded to the AACOBS Working Party on Bibliography, that a daily list of publications be issued along the lines of the HMSO lists. HMSO continues to issue a daily list; the Canadian Government Publishing Centre changed from daily+monthly+annual to weekly+monthly+annual lists in the latter part of 1978, and has now changed to weekly+quarterly plus presumably annual lists. The recommendation of the WPIR, though not without merit, does not take account of some practical problems. A check of the four *Weekly lists* for July 1979 showed 81, 75, 83 and 71

38

items listed in issues 1-4 respectively. Prompter recording by daily lists, with an average of 16 items, would not be of much benefit and it would surely add to the burden for AGPS. For any retrospective checking, weekly lists are much quicker to scan than daily lists, but it would be asking too much to have weekly cumulations as well.

Details of each entry

The entries for free material included in the *Weekly list* are complete except for collation and the ISBN; this information is not readily available until it appears in the *Cumulative list*. For selection purposes, it is extremely useful to know whether a "not for sale" item comprises 5 or 50 pages, and it is recommended that this detail be included in the *Weekly list*. (R.8)

Serial entries are recorded in full each time they appear: title, volume, number, date, responsible body, imprint, weight, price, catalogue number. There are thus 52 full entries for the weekly *Commonwealth record* in the *Cumulative list*. It is recommended that this information be reduced, so that both the title and responsible body are recorded only once in each issue, and the rest of the information is indented. This would be more economical of space, and be easier to scan. In fact, there is little point in having 52 entries in the *Cumulative list*; surely an entry saying "weekly, x cents per issue, x dollars per annum" would suffice. However, the AGPS may be insisting on multiple entries because each issue bears a different catalogue number. (R.9)

It is also recommended that AGPS be asked to reformat entries so that the AGPS catalogue number, unquestionably an essential part of the entry, does not come at the start of each entry. The numbers are not a filing device, and make alphabetical entries harder to scan. It is suggested that they be put on the bottom line of the entry, with price and weight, or if this is impossible, moved to the right hand margin. (R.10)

In addition it is recommended that the AGPS provide much more extensive advertising for the microfiche edition of its catalogue in journals such as the *ALJ*, *AARL*, *ASLN*. (R.11)

At the Seminar on Government Publications held on 31 August 1979 in Canberra, Mr B.P. Shurman, Director of Publishing, AGPS, mentioned that a review of their various lists would be taking place presently. To further this matter, it may be worth while to take up the Joint Committee's recommendation "that the AGPS initiate discussions with representatives of AACOBS and the State Library Boards on the desirability of establishing an advisory board similar to the HMSO Services Working Party" (Para 19.8). This may or may not have taken place by the time of making this review, and it is strongly recommended that one or two librarians outside the AGPS be present at any such discussions, should the advisory board not be established by then. (R.12)

I should point out that I wrote to AGPS in August 1977 and made recommendations regarding the inclusion of free AGPS publications in the *Monthly list* and non-AGPS publications in the *Cumulative list*, the basic arrangement, the listing of serials and the positioning of AGPS catalogue numbers, and although the receipt of my letter was acknowledged there has been no further response. Several other suggestions which I made at the time have since been implemented.

New South Wales

The N.S.W. Government Printer (letter from G.P. of 19 April 1979) prints for Parliament, departments and statutory authorities. Departments are required to have their printing done by the Government Printing Office, and the Government Printer believes that the Office is now handling almost all departmental publications. *Publications issued* lists all publications printed by the Government Printer during the month and which are available for sale from the Government Printing Office. This includes Bills (all printings?), Acts, Regulations, Parliamentary papers, Debates, serials including the Government gazette and the Industrial gazette, and miscellaneous monographs. Other publications which he prints for government departments and statutory authorities are not listed or sold by him. It would be extremely useful to have a full listing of everything which he prints, with an indication of the source of supply for the material which he does not sell. However, Dr R. Cope pointed out in his reply to the Task Force questionnaire:

> The Government Printer has in the past been urged to prepare a general listing of his stock as well as a listing of what he actually prints as well as publishes. No success has been achieved and it is doubtful whether any is likely unless the Printer can see a tangible benefit resulting from the labour involved.

It is recommended that this request be repeated and be transmitted to a higher authority. (R.13) The bibliographic detail provided in *Publications issued* seems to be quite adequate, with the exception of the Parliamentary papers section; it is recommended that the GP be asked to include session and Pp number as part of each entry and to ensure that all printings of Bills emanating from both houses are included. (R.14)

Queensland

The Queensland Government Printer prints for Parliament, the public service sector and some local authorities. He issues no list of the material for which he is responsible except Acts and Regulations on sale at his Office: this list appears periodically in the Queensland government gazette. There is no listing of the parliamentary material: Parliamentary papers, Votes and proceedings, Hansard, or of the Gazette. "Publications are printed for state departments and delivered to the ordering departments to be disposed of as they see fit" (Letter of 10.3.78 from Government Printer). It is recommended that the Queensland Government Printer be asked to produce a full and regular listing of the material which he prints and/or sells. (R.15)

South Australia

The S.A. Government Printer issued until May 1976 (plus Dec. 1976) a monthly list entitled *South Australian government publications* which included Parliamentary papers (with Pp numbers), legislation, industrial awards (as cited in the Government gazette) but not Hansard, Votes and proceedings or Bills. Since that time, there has been one issue of *South Australian publications* dated January 1978 which is a listing in broad subject groups of material in print (without personal or corporate author, or date of publication). In April 1978, advice was received that *South Australian publications* would be issued on a six monthly basis; this does not appear to have happened. It is recommended that the S.A. Government Printer be urged to resume a monthly list and to include in it all publications which he prints or for which he is in any way responsible. (R.16)

Tasmania

The Government Printer publishes and sells parliamentary, statutory and regulatory material. All departmental printing must be submitted through him. Only Acts and the occasional monograph are advertised for sale in the Tasmanian government gazette. It is recommended that the Government Printer be asked to produce an independent, full and regular listing of the material which he prints or sells. (R.17)

Victoria

Victorian government departments are required by a Treasury circular (14.2.78) to arrange "total printing services" through the Government Printing Office, which is thus playing a co-ordinating role, and is aware of all printing jobs being undertaken for departments.

The Victorian Government Printing Office issues *Monthly list of publications (MLP)* which includes all publications printed and sold by the Printing Office. This includes Acts, Statutory rules, Bills (since the November 1978 issue), Hansard, Determinations of the various industrial boards and of the Industrial Appeals Court, the Government gazette and a few other miscellaneous items. It would be valuable to include in *MLP* a record of those departmental publications which the Office does not print or sell and source of supply, and it is recommended that the Government Printer be asked to do this. (R.18) It is also recommended that the Government Printer be asked to ensure that all printing of Bills emanating from both houses are included in the List. (R.19) Bibliographic detail for current publications appears to be quite adequate; it would be helpful to include in the section headed 'Previously listed publications' the date of publication of each item. It is the intention of the Victorian Government Printing Office to produce an annual cumulation of the list at the end of 1979; Victoria will be the first state to do this.

Western Australia

The W.A. Government Printer prints for Parliament and all departments funded from Consolidated Revenue. Other departments and statutory authorities are free to choose their printer, and some select the Government Printer.

The W.A. Government Printer issues a *Quarterly price list and information sheet* and appears to list only legislation and the Government gazette. It is recommended that he be urged to list all publications for which he is responsible. (R.20)

Northern Territory

Advice was received in June 1979 from Mr A.B. Caudell, Government Printer:

> The Northern Territory Government is presently looking at ways and means of formalising government publications and the sale and distribution of same. As the situation stands at the moment, there is not, to the best of my knowledge, any formal listing of N.T. Government Publications. You will appreciate that up until 1 July 1978, this total responsibility was vested in A.G.P.S. Canberra. We do hope, however, to formalise procedures associated with the above matter in the near future.

It is recommended that the Northern Territory Government Printer be requested to compile a retrospective list of his publications issued from July 1978, and for a list of current publications which he prints/ distributes/ sells to be compiled on a regular basis, i.e. not less than quarterly. (R.21)

BIBLIOGRAPHICAL CONTROL OF AUSTRALIAN GOVERNMENT PUBLICATIONS BY LIBRARIES

As has already been mentioned, some bibliographical control is made at source, i.e. by the printer or publisher. In summary, AGPS lists those publications which it publishes, and a tiny proportion of other federal publications; some, but not all, of the state government printers issue lists, but only of material sold by their office. There is a vast amount of material which is published by departments and statutory authorities themselves at federal and state level, which never reaches nor is seen by the AGPS or the several state government printers, and for which there is no bibliographical control at the publishing stage. Certainly a few bodies issue independent lists of their publications from time to time, or refer to them in their annual report, and this will be discussed later.

Because of the poor control at source, users are extremely dependent on the lists compiled by the various libraries. Given the existence of some government printers lists, the listing by libraries duplicates the records for a proportion of publications. However, the likelihood of government printers (with the possible exception of the AGPS) listing any publications other than those which they have for sale is slight, and it is thus essential that there be a comprehensive list or lists presumably made by libraries recording government publications from all sources.

Bibliographical control by libraries of Australian federal, state and local government publications is based (with the exception of *Official publications of Western Australia* and since January 1977 *Australian government publications*) on the various federal and state deposit arrangements, which require a copy of all publications to be sent to the National Library, and in addition, those of each state to be deposited in a designated library of each state; basically, these bibliographies are therefore accessions lists. Difficulties exist in enforcing the various pieces of relevant legislation; the federal *Copyright Act* 1968 which requires the deposit of all material in the National Library also states "subject to part VII, this Act binds the Crown, but nothing in this Act renders the Crown liable to be prosecuted for an offence." Problems which these deposit libraries have to face include ignorance of the requirements, carelessness and difficulties in interpretation of what is a publication. This, however, appears to be a world-wide problem, not just an Australian one. In general terms, the success of collecting and subsequent listing is dependent on these deposit arrangements, the goodwill of the author agency, plus the perceptiveness and determination of the library responsible for the bibliography.

Since the *Copyright Act*, Cabinet decisions, Treasury circulars etc. are not working adequately where they relate to centralised production, deposit etc., it is recommended that ways of enforcing these provisions be looked into. (R.22)

Australian government publications are currently listed in a number of bibliographies. Publications of the federal government are recorded in the National Library's *Australian national bibliography (ANB)* and *Australian government publications (AGP)*; state government publications are recorded in *ANB*, *AGP*, and the several state-based lists: *New South Wales official publications received in the State Library of New South Wales (NSWOP)*, *Queensland government publications (QGP)*, *Monthly list of publications of South Australian interest received in the State Library of South Australia (MLPSA)*, *Victorian government publications received by the State Library of Victoria (VGP)* and *Official publications of Western Australia (OPWA)*. Local government publications may be found in *ANB*, *MLPSA* and *Legal deposit Victoria*. Publications of inter-governmental organisations appear in *ANB* and *AGP*.

It is necessary for the value and success of these various lists to be considered from two points of view: 1) the need for the multiplicity of lists and the duplication of effort involved, and if so 2) the adequacy of each list.

In considering the need or otherwise for the plethora of existing lists, two things need to be taken into account, firstly speed of listing and secondly comprehensiveness. Given the short runs which are produced of some government publications, and the urgency of the demands of users, speed of listing is of major importance for the notification of new publications; prompt publishing of these lists is also very important, and in this respect monthly lists have clear advantages over quarterly ones. The second important consideration is that lists be as comprehensive and complete as possible, within their given terms of reference.

It would seem highly desirable that each individual bibliography be evaluated in these two respects before any recommendations are made regarding the continuation or cessation of particular bibliographies. While it is actually impossible to establish the completeness of individual bibliographies - given that these bibliographies are our major source of information about what exists, and there is no way of making a counter check - relative completeness can be established. I believe that for state publications the state lists are more comprehensive, because their compilers are closer to the point of production and issue and are thus in a better position to know about items not deposited under the various legal deposit arrangements, and are able to pursue the material with greater ease from departments and officers personally known. I also think that in many cases the information is quicker to appear. What appears to be duplication of effort may be so only partially, and the speed of listing and comprehensiveness of the state lists may justify the effort involved. It is recommended that a comparative evaluation be made between *ANB* and *AGP* and between the state sections of these two bibliographies and the state lists with regard to timeliness and comprehensiveness. Only in the light of the findings of such an investigation can an informed recommendation be made for the expansion, continuation or cessation of these various lists. (R.23)

It is recommended that simultaneously with the suggested evaluation, discussions be held with the National Library to see if it would be possible to raise the priority of *AGP*, to issue it more frequently and more speedily, and to enlarge its scope. (R.24)

Theoretically, the "ideal" would be for the several state lists to cease, provided the libraries which currently compile these lists are willing and able to accept responsibility for quick notification of bibliographic data to the National Library so that the latter may be in a position to compile promptly an expanded and more comprehensive national bibliography of Australian government publications.

In practical terms, there are of course many difficulties. There can be no question that *ANB*, as our national bibliography, must retain the highest priority; but *ANB* does not accept contributed entries. *AGP*, which does accept contributed entries, must by implication have a lower priority. Therefore even if the several state libraries were prompt in their notification, it is not likely that we could expect very prompt information from the National Library. The present considerable delays which are experienced with *AGP* (until mid September, the latest issue held by La Trobe University Library was July-Sept. 1978) would be quite unacceptable if all our eggs were in this one basket.

Much of the effectiveness of such a plan would rest on the several state libraries. When *TGP* ceased at the end of 1976, it was agreed that the State Library of Tasmania should send entries to the National Library for inclusion in *AGP*. State Library of Tasmania entries, with a designation indicating that they are contributed entries and not sighted by the National Library, have been included in *AGP* since 1977. It is not known how satisfactory this arrangement is. Contributed entries are now also supplied by the State Libraries of South Australia and Western Australia; *VGP*, *QGP* and *NSWOP* are scanned for additional material.

It is recommended that discussions be held with the National Library on the possible ways of improving *AGP*, with special reference to the following:

(a) the possibility of compiling a more comprehensive bibliography, that is *AGP* expanded to include separate categories for local and intergovernmental publications
(b) the inclusion of subordinate legislation
(c) the inclusion of all printings of bills emanating from each house of all legislatures, including explanatory memoranda
(d) the recording of bills under the heading of the appropriate legislature
(e) the issuing of *AGP* on a monthly basis, in mimeographed form, unindexed, but including information about agency name changes

(f) the continued inclusion of contributed entries
(g) the continuation of the printed quarterly and annual cumulations
(h) the inclusion of all publications over 2 years old, if not previously listed
(i) the inclusion of publications of limited distribution and not available for distribution, with a note regarding limitations
(j) the possibility of *AGP* being made available as a computerised data base through AUSINET. (R.25)

Should it become clear, after the evaluation of the lists and discussion with the National Library, that the state library lists are necessary, as well as *AGP* then it is recommended:

(a) that a request be made to the State Library of Tasmania for *TGP* to be resumed
(b) that a request be made to the WA Parliamentary Library for the continuation of *OPWA*
(c) that the specific recommendations for the various state lists which follow be made
(d) that the National Library be requested to expand *AGP* to include categories for local and intergovernmental publications; that it include subordinate legislation; that federal material be notified monthly in a mimeographed list; that the printed quarterly and annual indexed cumulations continue; that publications over 2 years old be included; that it continue to include contributed entries; that it include publications of limited distribution, with a note regarding limitations. (R.26)

In considering the adequacy of each list, the best method seems to be to describe the "ideal" list; to this end, each list has been described and evaluated below, indicating where it falls short of the ideal, with suggestions for improvements. Quite generally the evaluation of any list of official publications must include consideration of the following points:

(a) type of agency included
(b) definition of the word "publication"
(c) form
(d) retrospectivity
(e) adequacy of bibliographical detail
(f) frequency and cumulation, arrangement and indexing
(g) information about structural changes in government
(h) information regarding source of supply, cost and availability.

In these terms an "ideal" list would meet the following requirements:

(a) Publications of government departments, statutory authorities and all agencies performing any function of the government including autonomous statutory bodies with the exception of hospitals, schools and universities should be listed. Publications issued at federal, state, regional and local government level as well as intergovernmental publications should appear in any national listing, and state, regional and local publications in state lists.

(b) The word publication should be broadly interpreted on the basis recommended by Pross and Pross:

> A government publication is created when a document prepared for or by an agency of government is reproduced and circulated to individuals and groups other than those advising or negotiating with the government concerning the subject matter of the document.[4]

Differentiation needs to be made between government records and government documents. By the term government records is meant "domestic" material intended for internal departmental use, working papers created in the administration of public affairs, which may or may not be printed, but which are not intended for outside circulation; government documents or publications on the other hand are often printed and are intended for outside circulation, even if this is limited. Publications available in limited numbers or of limited or restricted distribution should be recorded in a bibliography, with a note regarding any limitations to distribution.

Non-book material should also be included: films, maps, computer tapes, unless, as at the federal level, there is a separate bibliography for these materials.

(c) Publications appearing in the following forms should be included: monographs and pamphlets, with no lower limit to page numbers, each issue of annuals and annual reports, and numbered and unnumbered series. Titles of new and continuing serials, with a note regarding status and frequency, and the last issue of deceased serials should be listed.

(d) All publications falling into the above categories received in the library should be listed, regardless of their date of publication; they should not be excluded because they are more than 2 years old.

(e) Brief entries are quite sufficient, but bibliographical detail must include for monographs: author, title, personal authors, chairman's name, publisher, date, number of pages, ISBN; for serials: author, title, frequency, ISSN.

(f) Arrangement should be by jurisdiction and then alphabetically by keyword or official name of the issuing agency. Local government publications should follow the sequence for the state to which they belong. Publications of Commonwealth/State or of regional or interstate bodies e.g. Premiers Conferences, should be batched in a clearly identifiable group within a national bibliography. A clear explanation should be given in the preface of the arrangement followed. An index should be provided to personal authors and chairmen of committees etc., to titles and to subjects. The bibliography should be cumulated at least annually.

(g) Notes regarding structural changes in government should also be included to update existing government directories, given that by their very nature such directories are generally out of date by the time they are published.

(h) Source of supply should be designated e.g. Government Printer, issuing agency including, in the case of serials, editor where known; symbols should show whether the publication is for sale or free distribution.

In the following analysis of the several bibliographies, the pattern set out above has been strictly followed.

ANB and *AGP* both list Australian government publications, but there are many differences between them.

Australian national bibliography

(a) Publications at federal, state, regional, local and intergovernment level are included. Because it is the national bibliography, the definition of a government agency is not relevant.

(b) Maps and films are excluded, but are recorded separately in *Australian maps* and *Australian films*. The preface states "The Copyright Act of 1968 requires that one copy of published library material be deposited... with the National Library. This material forms the basis of the bibliography." "Published library material" is not defined in *ANB*. The *Copyright Act* does not require restricted material to be deposited (s.29) and presumably there is none in *ANB*; publications for limited distribution, if included, are not so designated.

(c) Government publications, with the exception of individual acts, bills and ordinances, are listed. Included are monographs and monographs in series; pamphlets of under 5 pages are not included unless they form part of a series. First and last issues of serials are included, plus serials where there have been changes in bibliographic details. CIP and revised entries are included.

(d) According to the preface, material published within the current and preceding two years is listed; in fact, the 2 year rule is not strictly applied, and any substantial publication older than 2 years old is included in *ANB*.

(e) The quality of bibliographic description is excellent.

(f) Entries are arranged since 1972, in classified sequence, and there are detailed corporate and personal author/title/series and subject indexes to issues of all frequencies. There are four issues a month with the fourth issue cumulating into the monthly issue, with 2 four monthly cumulations and an annual cumulation. Notification is relatively prompt.

(g) There is no information about structural changes in government, and this could not be supplied in a subject-arranged bibliography.

(h) Information is supplied where available regarding source of supply and cost.

Australian government publications

(a) "AGP lists official publications of Australia, its Territories and its States." There is no attempt to define an official agency, nor have any excluded categories been noted; however, hospitals and schools are not included nor, obviously, have local government publications. Intergovernmental publications are included. Dr R. Cope, in his reply to the Task Force questionnaire, made special reference to intergovernmental publications. He said

> These represent a growing area of interest (e.g. conferences of Federal and state ministers of housing, agriculture, aboriginal affairs, health and the like). Because

> the host government is often the publisher of any report or proceedings, it is difficult to keep track of the publications which do appear. The form of initial entry in *AGP* (under name of government) is not hospitable to intergovernmental publications.

Quite a lot of this material is recorded in *AGP*, but it is included for the most part with the Commonwealth publications, which seems inappropriate and the index does not always assist in locating it.

(b) Non-book material is excluded. There has been no attempt to define a publication. Publications for limited distribution do not appear to be included.

(c) "The bibliography attempts to cover comprehensively all official books and serials ... serials published more frequently than once a year are listed in the annual volume only." Excluded are statutory rules and orders, notice papers, journals, votes and proceedings, Conciliation and Arbitration Court awards, Victorian labour determinations. Individual acts, bills and ordinances have been listed since 1971 (prior to that in *ANB*). There is no lower limit to page numbers.

(d) Material issued in the current and preceding 2 years is listed.

(e) "AGP is not intended to be a cataloguing tool, and abbreviated descriptive entries, not full cataloguing entries, are given." Bibliographic description is brief, but for the most part adequate except that bills are entered under the form heading Laws, Statutes, etc., instead of under the appropriate legislative body. ISSNs and ISBNs are included.

(f) *AGP* is issued in 3 quarterly parts with the fourth part appearing in the annual consolidation. Arrangement is by jurisdiction and within each alphabetically by the corporate body responsible for their publication; names of departments are inverted where necessary to file by keyword, otherwise form of entry is conventional. The 3 quarterly parts and the annual cumulation have an index to personal authors, titles and subjects.

(g) Information about structural changes in government is included.

(h) Publications available from the AGPS or the state government printers are so designated. Application for the others, according to the preface, should be made to the body under which the publication is listed. In most cases, assuming a current directory or even phone book is held, this will be sufficient. For others, such as committees of inquiry, the source of supply is far from obvious and the inclusion of addresses for these bodies would be helpful.

The National Library's policy was, until the beginning of 1977, to record only material which was held by the National Library. With the demise of *TGP* at the end of 1976, the National Library reviewed its policy and is now including in *AGP*, in contrast to *ANB*, contributed entries supplied by the State Libraries of Tasmania, South Australia and Western Australia. The National Library is also scanning the other state lists and is using entries from these state lists as contributed entries for *AGP*. Thus in some respects, *AGP* will come to be a more substantial source of bibliographical data for state government publications than *ANB*.

Major omissions from these two national bibliographies, when considered together, are subordinate legislation, local government and intergovernmental publications of less than 5 pages and publications other than major ones which are over 2 years old. Other difficulties arise out of the relative incompleteness of *ANB* and the great delay in the appearance of *AGP* - the 1978 cumulation having been received mid-September 1979. These factors greatly restrict their usefulness for selection purposes or for checking current issues of official publications.

New South Wales official publications received in the State Library of New South Wales

(a) "For the purpose of this list the term "Official Publications" has been taken to include publications of the Parliament of New South Wales and all departments and agencies performing any function of the government of the State. It does not include the publications of hospitals, schools, or municipal shire councils."

(b) Maps are excluded, according to the preface, and it would also appear that films are excluded. There is no indication that publications which are restricted or of limited distribution are included.

(c) "All annuals, the first issue received of a new periodical title, and each [monograph and] monograph published in a series (with series note), and all Parliamentary papers will appear in the monthly list. However, rules, regulations, by-laws, ordinances, etc. are not listed individually". Individual Bills (one printing only?) and Acts are included. It is also stated that reports or articles from periodicals are excluded; there is no list of periodicals. There appears to be no lower limit to page numbers.

(d) No cut-off date is mentioned; one 1975 publication was listed in the April 1979 list, and a 1971 publication in the August 1979 list.

(e) Bibliographic description is quite adequate, except for the omission of ISBNs and ISSNs.

(f) *NSWOP* has been issued monthly since 1968 and cumulated annually since 1975. Arrangement is by keyword of issuing agency; there is an index to personal authors. There is an annual cumulation but no index to titles or subjects.

(g) There are no notes regarding structural or agency name changes.

(h) A list of publishers and addresses is given, and the price of each item where known.

It is recommended that the State Library of New South Wales be asked to list the publications of municipal shire councils; to include publications of limited distribution and those not available for distribution, maps and films, rules, regulations, by-laws and ordinances; a list of periodicals; to ensure that all printings of Bills are included; to include ISBNs and ISSNs as part of the bibliographic description; to include an index to titles and subjects, and notes regarding administrative changes. (R.27)

Queensland government publications

(a) The introduction states "*QGP* is a list of all new departmental publications received in the State Library of Queensland during the quarter covered by the issue. The bibliography attempts to cover the output (excluding audio-visual production) of all State Government agencies, with the exception of schools." Hospitals do not appear to be represented; it is not known if this is policy or not.

(b) Audio-visual material, as already mentioned, is excluded. Maps are included. Items designated "limited distribution" are included.

(c) Monographs, pamphlets (down to one page), each issue of an annual, and numbered series are included. Bills (all printings?) and Acts are recorded individually, Statutory rules are not. "Current serials" (including annuals other than annual reports) are listed once a year; they are grouped by issuing body to which there is a useful serials title index. Serial titles appearing in *QGP* for the first time are listed in the main monograph and annual report sequence and are indicated by an asterisk. First and last issues of a serial are also recorded in this section.

(d) One publication dated "1971?" was recorded in the July-Sept. 1977 issue; there would appear to be no cut-off date.

(e) Bibliographic description seems adequate, apart from the omission of ISBNs and ISSNs.

(f) *QGP* has been issued quarterly since the beginning of 1977. Arrangement is alphabetical by official name of agency)i.e. there are entries under Dept of) and references from chairmen and personal authors are contained in the corporate author sequence. There is no annual cumulation and no index to subjects, or to titles other than those of serials.

(g) There are no notes about structural or agency name changes.

(h) Source of supply is given with addresses, and prices where known.

It is recommended that the Library Board of Queensland be asked to include local government publications; audio-visual material; Statutory rules; to ensure that all printings of Bills are included; to include publications which are not available for distribution; ISSNs and ISBNs; information regarding structural changes to government and agency name changes; to produce an annual cumulation (from 1977) with indexes to personal authors, titles and subjects; to try to issue *QGP* more promptly (the latest issue held by La Trobe University Library and the State Library of Victoria in September 1979 is the last quarter of 1978). (R.28)

Monthly list of publications of South Australian interest received in the State Library of South Australia

(a) *MLPSA* lists publications (government and non-government) received in the State Library of South Australia, some on legal deposit; local government publications are included. It also includes federal government publications which relate to South Australia.

(b) There is no indication that limited distribution material is listed; maps and sound recordings are included.

(c) Monographs and pamphlets, with apparently no lower page limit, and first and last issues of serials are included. There is no listing of individual annuals; there is no current periodical listing, though this may appear later; Bills, Acts and Statutory rules have not been included. The total number of government publications included is indeed very small.

(d) There is clearly no cut-off date; one 1966 monograph was listed in the issue for January 1979.

(e) Bibliographic detail appears to be quite adequate, except that ISSNs and ISBNs are now shown.

(f) *MLPSA* has been issued monthly since January 1979, replacing a similar listing which formed part of *South Australiana* and was issued half-yearly. Arrangement is in one alphabetical sequence which includes government and non-government publications; maps follow in a separate sequence.

(g) Notes about structural changes are not included; it would be difficult to do this, given the arrangement of the list which is alphabetical by "main entry".

(h) Source of supply is not given; prices do not appear to be included.

It is recommended that limited distribution material be included, plus publications which are not available for distribution; that individual annuals be recorded; that there be an annual list of periodicals; that individual Bills (all printings), Acts and Statutory rules be included; that the State Library be encouraged to pursue more actively and list SA government publications; that ISSNs and ISBNs be included, also source of supply and price. (R.29)*

Tasmanian government publications was compiled on a quarterly basis by the State Library of Tasmania from 1972 to 1976. Since 1977 S.L.T. has sent entries to the National Library for inclusion in *AGP*.

Victorian government publications

(a) It includes items published by "Victorian government departments and instrumentalities". Included in the 1977 edition, (but not in 1976) are "publications of certain statutory authorites such as the Melbourne & Metropolitan Board of Works, the Dandenong Valley Authority, and the National Fitness Council". Publications of schools, hospitals and universities are not included.

(b) Maps have been included since 1978. Local government material is excluded; such material of 5 pages and over is recorded in *Legal deposit Victoria*. Items of limited distribution and "not available for distribution" are included.

*A letter from the State Library of South Australia in January 1980 reports that several changes have been made to the *Monthly list*.

(c) "Items included are monographs and pamphlets, annuals and annual reports, and numbered and unnumbered series. [In the annual cumulation] titles of new and continuing serials are listed in a separate alphabetical sequence". New serials are recorded in the monthly issues. There is no lower page limit. Individual Bills (one printing only), Acts and Statutory rules are listed and so are all the Determinations issued by the Department of Labour and Industry, and the Industrial Appeals Tribunal.

(d) Items received during the month, which have been published during the current year and past 2 years are included.

(e) Bibliographic description seems to be quite adequate; however, Bills should be entered under the appropriate house of Parliament, not under the form heading Laws, Statutes, etc.

(f) *VGP* has been compiled since January 1976 on a monthly basis with an annual cumulation. Arrangement is alphabetical by keyword of the agency, the name being inverted where necessary. References are made from forms of headings not used, e.g. from a board entered as a sub-unit of a department to the board itself, as well as from variant forms of a name. In the annual cumulation there is an index to personal authors, editors and chairmen. There is no index to subjects or titles.

(g) Useful notes regarding administrative changes are included.

(h) Items available only from the issuing body are indicated by an asterisk, and a list of suppliers' addresses is given at the end of each monthly list (the list of addresses is dropped from the annual list). Prices are given where known.

It is recommended that local government publications, with no lower limit to page numbers be included; that all printings of Bills emanating from each house be included; that open entries for new serials be carried forward from the monthly issues to the annual cumulation; that publications over 2 years old be included; that a title and subject index be added to the annual cumulation. (R.30)

Official publications of Western Australia

OPWA has been compiled on a quarterly basis since 1973 by the Parliamentary Library of Western Australia. It is an exception in the area of state bibliographies, in that it is based not on publications received in the Library, but on entries submitted to it by the author agencies.

(a) Excluded, according to the introduction, are the publications of schools, hospitals, "certain autonomous statutory bodies" and local government authorities.

(b) *OPWA* states in the introduction that it excludes "non-book material such as films". Maps also appear to be excluded, and so do publications of limited distribution. In the return from the WA report to the Task Force (May 1977) it was stated that it was intended to widen the scope of *OPWA* to include local government publications. By the end of 1978 this had not occurred.

(c) Monographs, pamphlets of all sizes, annual reports and numbered series are included in each issue. Individual Parliamentary papers either are not included or they appear without a series note. Acts are recorded individually; Bills and Statutory rules are not. Annuals and serials are listed with the monographs; in the case of serials, sometimes the entry is for a specific issue, sometimes only the title and frequency are recorded. Strangely the publications of the Australian Bureau of Statistics, and presumably its Western Australian Office (though it does not say this) are included.

(d) No cut-off date is mentioned, and it is difficult to establish this owing to the paucity of bibliographic data.

(e) The quality of bibliographic description is poor, no doubt reflecting the manner of compilation; dates of publication and pagination are often omitted. Entries such as 'Police Department. Annual report. 39p. $2.50' are of limited use. There is no indication that any of the annual reports appear as parliamentary papers.

(f) Frequency is quarterly and there is no cumulation. Arrangement is alphabetical by keyword of the issuing agency. There are no indexes or references to assist with personal names etc.

(g) There are no notes about structural or agency name changes.

(h) Source of supply is given with addresses, and prices where known.

A questionnaire was circulated by the Parliamentary Library in March 1979 asking whether or not users would like to see *OPWA* continuing, and calling for any remarks users would like to make. The questionnaire said that "For some time the Joint Library Committee has been concerned that the actual cost of publishing *OPWA* has continued to increase, and that the staff time used to prepare this publication may now no longer be justified. However, before making a final decision on whether to cease publishing *OPWA* the Joint Library Committee would like to know the views of those organizations that would prefer to see this publication continued".

The October-December 1978 issue (received at the end of February) is the most recent issue held by La Trobe University; it is to be hoped that *OPWA* has not been suspended.

It is recommended that the Western Australian Parliamentary Library be asked to consider broadening the coverage of *OPWA* to include the publications of "certain autonomous statutory bodies" which are at present excluded, as well as those of local government authorities; that it include films, maps, and publications of limited distribution and those not available for distribution; that individual Parliamentary papers, Bills (all printings) and Statutory rules be included; that the form of entry for serials be standardised, that ABS WA Office publications be excluded (the WA office provides an adequate list, as well as ABS in Canberra), or else that it be clearly indicated that they are federal government publications; that there be no cut-off date for older publications; that the standard of bibliographic description be raised and applied consistently; that items which have not been sighted be included and marked with a symbol; that access be provided to personal names; that an annual cumulation be made; and that notes regarding structural changes in government be included. (R.31)

CONSOLIDATED INDEXES TO AUSTRALIAN PARLIAMENTARY PAPERS

Consolidated indexes exist for federal Parliamentary papers covering 1901-1949 and 1950/51-1961; work on the index for 1962-1975 is well underway and is expected to be available later this year. Half-yearly and annual indexes are also compiled and available quite promptly. All of these index the papers presented to Parliament i.e. Papers in the Parliamentary papers series, plus those tabled but not printed.

In New South Wales there are 5 consolidated indexes to the Minutes of the proceedings (of the Legislative Council) and the printed papers, which were compiled in the Office of the Legislative Council and which covered the years 1856-1954. There are also several consolidated indexes to the papers laid upon the table of the Legislative Assembly and printed, and to petitions received, covering 1880/81-1891 and 1904-1971, the latter period in 3 volumes. These indexes, at least the most recent one, 1947 to 1971, have been compiled in the Office of the Clerk of the Legislative Assembly. As far as access to the printed papers is concerned, these two sets of indexes appear to duplicate each other. There is however, no access to the Votes and proceedings of the Legislative Assembly other than in the index in the sessional volumes.

In Queensland there is no consolidated index to the papers, and it is highly desirable that one be compiled.

South Australian parliamentary papers are covered for the period 1857 to 1975 in 5 sequences. Those of Tasmania are covered from 1856-1967 in 2 sequences.

One index to Victorian parliamentary papers was compiled early this century by J.M. Worthington and covers the period 1851 to 1909. While it is certainly better than nothing, it cannot be relied upon, as it is inconsistent in the depth of indexing, omits "minor" papers, and contains some errors which suggest that it was compiled from the contents pages of the volumes of papers, without a check of the papers themselves. It would be most advantageous for a new index to be produced covering that period; of higher priority however, would be an index for the period 1910 to date. It is understood that an index on cards, which would require revision, exists in the Office of the Clerk of Papers of the Legislative Assembly.

In Western Australia there are two indexes which cover 1870-1946 and 1947-1956; the first deals only with Parliamentary papers, and does not include papers tabled but not ordered to be printed; the scope of the second has been extended to include as well papers which were tabled but not printed.

In this context mention should be made of Russell Cope's extremely useful *Australian parliamentary serials: a working checklist of sessional volumes.*

54

It is recommended that the clerks of papers of the parliaments of Queensland and Victoria be written to, asking them to take the necessary steps to have indexes to their papers compiled and published; that the clerk of the papers of the W.A. Parliament be written to, to ascertain what plans exist for the indexing of papers from 1957 on. (R.32)

RETROSPECTIVE LISTS

Some government publications were recorded in the first four volumes of J.A. Ferguson's *Bibliography of Australia*, which covers 1784 to 1850. The last three volumes, covering 1851 to 1900, exclude "Parliamentary papers and other governmental papers". The National Library gathers and maintains a file of addenda to Ferguson, and it is planned to issue a volume of the addenda, including government publications, for the period to 1850 in the near future. To date no effort has been made to compile a list of government publications to supplement the addenda for the period 1851 to 1900.[5] The "Ferguson gap" for official publications, from 1851 to 1937, when the *Annual catalogue of Australian publications* began, is thus wider than for commercial publications, and the coverage by the *Annual catalogue* is still far from complete up to 1960. The National Library is undertaking the compilation and publishing of a retrospective Australian national bibliography for the period 1901 to 1950.

> The scope of RNB is similar to that of ANB. It includes all official publications, with the exception of individual listing of serial parliamentary papers, individual acts, bills and ordinances... Pressure on the Library's staff resources have meant work on this project has had to be suspended.[6]

The arrangement, it is assumed, will be in classified sequence, and although a subject approach to government publications, particularly when combined with non-government publications, has considerable merit, it is regrettable that there will not be an author arrangement as the major approach to this material. While indexes will presumably provide access through corporate authors, notes of changes in administrative structure will be impossible to incorporate. There would seem to be a strong case for arguing for a separate national bibliography for 1901 to 1950 which contains only official publications, as already suggested by Dr Cope in 1973.[7] It may not be too late for this to be considered.

Access to Western Australian material alone is provided by Elmar Zalums' *Western Australian government publications, 1829-1959*, which attempts a comprehensive listing of WA publications, excluding Parliamentary papers, which can be traced through their own indexes.

Other early lists are the *Australasian bibliography*, 1893, based on the Free Public Library, Sydney, the *Catalogue of the Library of the [Commonwealth] Parliament from its commencement to May 1906*, its enlarged 2nd edition of 1911, and A.B. Foxcroft's *Australian catalogue*, 1911. Some of the earlier material can be identified through the aforementioned parliamentary paper indexes, and D.H. Borchardt's *Checklists of royal commissions*.

The Mitchell Library's *Dictionary catalog of printed books* includes references to a large collection of official documents, especially of the colonial period. Some access is provided through the card catalogues of Australia's major and older libraries, in particular the State Libraries of New South Wales and Victoria. The National Library holds cards in its union catalogue which have been supplied by contributing libraries, although entries are not incorporated in *NUCOM*.

The regular listing of Australian federal and state official publications began in 1937, i.e. with the second issue of the *Annual catalogue*. However, issues 6 to 9 for 1941 to 1944 exclude government publications. "Single issues of acts, bills, ordinances, statutory rules, Arbitration Court awards..." are not listed in the *Annual catalogue*. They were however listed, from 1952 to 1960 in the Monthly list of *Australian government publications*; this has never been cumulated. The *Annual catalogue* ceased in 1960 and was superseded in 1961 by *ANB*, *AGP* and *Current Australian serials*. Over the years there have been changes in the relative scope of *ANB* and *AGP*, but the combined coverage which was attempted differs little from that of today. Films and maps are catered for in *Australian films* and *Australian maps*, beginning in 1959 and 1968 respectively; prior to this, maps were recorded in *ANB*.

It is recommended that means be found to compile retrospective bibliographies for each of the five colonies other than WA from their inception to 1900. It is to be hoped, not only from the point of view of government publications, that work will be resumed on the retrospective national bibliography, 1901-1950; it may be worth while approaching the National Library to ask them to consider a separate sequence for government publications arranged by jurisdiction and corporate author, and incorporating notes about administrative changes. (R.33)

It is strongly recommended that the National Library be asked to include entries for Australian government publications in NUCOM. (R.34)

DEPARTMENTAL LISTS

Some federal and state departments and statutory authorities issue regular or irregular lists of their own publications of varying quality. Others record in their annual report the publications issued during the year. In the Victorian return for the Task Force, compiled by Michael Harrington, a detailed report of such material was supplied. An attempt to record all such bibliographies and lists was made by the Sub-Committee on Government Publications of the Victorian Regional Committee of AACOBS, for the 2nd edition of *Government publications of Australia: a list of lists*, which has just been completed, and all information available to the Task Force has been included in that publication.

The Joint Committee on Publications began an inquiry in 1975, which was left in abeyance and has been resumed this year, into the preparation, printing, presentation and distribution of annual reports of (federal) departments and statutory authorities. Written submissions were invited. Mr D.H. Borchardt, as Convenor of the Working Party on Bibliography, responded in September 1975, and included in his reply

> Since Annual reports represent a view of the year's work
> it is suggested that where appropriate there should be a

> list of all publications issued during the year by or on behalf of, or under the aegis of, the authority or department which is presenting the report. This list should contain the following details: monographs and articles in journals, series or published proceedings, titles of series and serials issued during the year... Each entry must include enough bibliographical detail to ensure easy identification and possible retrieval. The inclusion of ISBNs and ISSNs greatly facilitates this end. A list of names associated as authors with these publications would be desirable, as is also a subject index to all publications listed.

A submission was also sent by Mr Peter Clayton on behalf of the Government Publications Workshop (LAA Conference, Melbourne, August 1975) which included the following comment:

> We felt that the inclusion of a list of publications was essential. "Publication" should be interpreted in the broadest sense, to include not only special reports, statistical series etc., but also pamphlets, leaflets, handouts and other ephemera ..., internal documents of some possible wider interest, even if these are not publicly available. At the very least, such a listing would be of value to other Australian government departments and statutory authorities. There is also value in including articles published by staff members in learned journals ....

The *Report on annual reports referred to the Committee* by the Senate Standing Committee on Science and the Environment, March 1978 (APp 14/1978) p.3 states amongst its general comments:

> The Committee also sees merit in government departments publishing in their annual reports, or as an appendix, annual lists of the major papers and publications prepared within those departments and which are available to members of Parliament and to the general public. The lists shown in appendices to the annual report of the Dept. of Environment, Housing and Community Development are a good example. Such lists would be useful in assisting members of Parliament and interested members of the public to readily ascertain what papers and publications are available from the various departments, and on what subjects.

A report entitled *Statutory authorities of the Commonwealth: first report* by the Senate Standing Committee on Finance and Government Operations was released early this year and included in its recommendations regarding annual reports of statutory authorities that " ... the following general information be included in reports ... a list of any document prepared by the authority which are of public interest" (page 76).

Mr.D.H. Borchardt said when he gave evidence to the Joint Committee on Publications at the end of April, that he was greatly disturbed by the expression "public interest". He went on to say

> Quite obviously the question is what is the public interest and who is to determine it. It is very loose and open to question and lends itself to abuse. All documents prepared at public expense by departments, statutory authorities and so on, should be listed. I include all those which are freely available and those which are preduced in limited numbers as well as those which are restricted or confidential and which should be marked with a note to that effect.

The 7th special report of the Joint Committee on Publications, *Annual reports of Commonwealth departments and statutory authorities* (released September 1979), on the subject of the contents of annual reports recommends for inclusion "a list of publications issued by the organisation during the period (this may not be appropriate for organisations with very large numbers of publications, e.g. tertiary institutions)" Par. 3.5 (i). While the reason for the escape clause is well understood for bodies such as the ABS, CSIRO, it is unfortunate that a recommendtion was not made that a separate but regular listing be made, and that list be referred to in the annual report.

Some specific lists have not been critically examined; and it would seem desirable that this should be done in the near future. These include the ABS *Catalogue of publications*; CSIRO lists; indexes to legislation; and in particular, the coverage and adequacy of *APAIS*.

Improvements to the various government directories, from the point of view of comprehensive coverage, accuracy, indexing, speed of updating, are necessary, but although first class directories are essential to those working with government publications, the Working Party on Bibliography may not be the appropriate body to take action.

SUMMARY OF RECOMMENDATIONS

It is recommended that the AGPS be asked to spell out the names of those statutory authorities for whose publishing it is responsible. (R.1 p.23).
Recommendations regarding the various AGPS lists fall into several categories; they cover contents, arrangement, frequency and details included for each entry.

Contents

It is recommended that the AGPS be asked to include its own "non-publications" such as the Patent Office's *Australian official journal of patents, trademarks and designs* in its various lists. (R.2 p.28).

It is recommended that the AGPS be asked to include its free publications in the *Monthly list*. Granted that this list is designed to sell, it is frustrating for the user, when trying to identify an AGPS publication, to have to check not only 12 monthly issues but possibly 48 weekly issues as well. (R.3 p.28).

It is recommended that the AGPS be asked to carry forward such "Other Commonwealth Government Publications" as it lists into the *Cumulative list*. (R.4 p.29).

It is recommended that Bills and legislation be included in the microfiche catalogue at least for the current year, or until such time as specific lists or indexes appear e.g. *Cumulative list of bills and associated material*. (R.5 p.29).

It is recommended that the recommendation of the Joint Committee on Publications be strongly endorsed "that each publication produced by departments and statutory authorities be notified to AGPS upon its release, together with details as to the status of the document, whether it is for sale or free, and from where it can be obtained" but that the wording be amended so that "notified" reads "sent", and that the words "with the object of it being listed by AGPS" be added. However, to address this recommendation to AGPS would achieve little and steps should be taken for this issue to be addressed to a higher authority. (R.6 p.29).

Arrangement

It is recommended that AGPS be asked to consider the following arrangement of its monthly and cumulative lists: part I "Parliamentary publications, retaining the numerical arrangement for Parliamentary papers; part II "Legislation" - an alphabetical arrangement of Bills and a numerical arrangement of Acts and Statutory rules, ACT Ordinances and Regulations; part III "Gazettes"; part IV "Departmental publications".

Some radical changes are called for in Part IV. The basic arrangement should be by corporate body, along the lines of *Canadian government publications*; this would mean an amalgamation of departmental and statutory authority monographs and serials, priced and free, AGPS and non-AGPS, batched under the name of each department and statutory authority. There should be an index at the back to all four parts - including parliamentary publications and legislation - with entries by personal author, chairman, editor, title, series and subject. In the case of Parliamentary papers, the index should refer the user to both sequences. (R.7 p.29).

Frequency

The Erwin Committee recommended in 1964 "that the publishing office publish daily and monthly a list of the Commonwealth publications issued during the past 24 hours, or month, respectively" (Para 166 (a)). The Joint Committee on Publications, although endorsing the importance of listing, made no recommendations regarding frequency. A recommendation was made by the AACOBS Working Party on Information Resources (July 1977), and forwarded to the AACOBS Working Party on Bibliography, that a daily list of publications be issued along the lines of the HMSO lists. HMSO continues to issue a daily list; the Canadian Government Publishing Centre changed from daily+monthly+annual to weekly+monthly+annual lists in the latter part of 1978, and has now changed to weekly+quarterly plus presumably annual lists. The recommendation of the WPIR, though not without merit, does not take account of some practical problems. A check of the four *Weekly lists* for July 1979 showed 81, 75, 83 and 71 items listed in issues 1-4 respectively. Prompter recording by daily lists, with an average of 16 items, would not be of much benefit and it would certainly add to the burden for AGPS. For any retrospective checking, weekly lists are much quicker to scan than daily lists, but it would be asking too much to have weekly cumulations as well.

Details of each entry

The entries for free material included in the *Weekly list* are complete except for collation and the ISBN; this information is not readily available until it appears in the *Cumulative list*. For selection purposes, it is extremely useful to know whether a "not for sale" item comprises 5 or 50 pages, and it is recommended that this detail be included in the *Weekly list*. (R.8 p.30).

Serial entries are recorded in full each time they appear: title, volume, number, date, responsible body, imprint, weight, price, catalogue number. There are thus 52 full entries for the weekly *Commonwealth record* in the *Cumulative list*. It is recommended that this information be reduced, so that both the title and responsible body are recorded only once in each issue, and the rest of the information is indented. This would be more economical of space, and be easier to scan. In fact, there is little point in having 52 entries in the *Cumulative list*; surely an entry saying "weekly, x cents per issue, x dollars per annum" would suffice. However, the AGPS may be insisting on multiple entries because each issue bears a different catalogue number. (R.9 p.30).

It is also recommended that AGPS be asked to reformat entries so that the AGPS catalogue number, unquestionably an essential part of the entry, does not come at the start of each entry. The numbers are not a filing device, and make alphabetical entries harder to scan. It is recommended that they be put on the bottom line of the entry, with price and weight, or if this is impossible, moved to the right hand margin. (R.10 p.30)

In addition it is recommended that the AGPS provide much more extensive advertising for the microfiche edition of its catalogue in journals such as the *ALJ*, *AARL*, *ASLN*. (R.11 p.30)

At the Seminar on Government Publications held on 31 August 1979 in Canberra, Mr B.P. Shurman, Director of Publishing, AGPS, mentioned that a review of their various lists would be taking place presently. To further this matter, it may be worth while taking up the Joint Committee's recommendation "that the AGPS initiate discussions with representatives of AACOBS and the State Library Boards on the desirability of establishing an advisory board similar to the HMSO Services Working Party" (Para 19.8). This may or may not have taken place by the time of making this review, and it is strongly recommended that one or two librarians outside the AGPS be present at any such discussions, should the advisory board not be established by then. (R.12 p.30)

It is recommended that a request be made to an authority higher than the NSW Government Printer, urging the Government Printer to prepare a general listing of his stock, as well as a listing of what he actually prints as well as publishes. (R.13 p.31)

It is recommended that the NSW Government Printer be ordered to include session and Pp number of part of the entry in the Parliamentary paper section of *Publications issued*, and to ensure that all printings of Bills emanating from both houses are included. (R.14 p.31)

It is recommended that the Queensland Government Printer be asked to produce a full and regular listing of the material which he prints and/or sells. (R.15 p.31)

It is recommended that the S.A. Government Printer be urged to resume a monthly list and to include in it all publications which he prints or for which he is in any way responsible. (R.16 p.32)

It is recommended that the Tasmanian Government Printer be asked to produce an independent, full and regular listing of the material which he prints or sells. (R.17 p.32)

It would be valuable to include in *MLP* a record of those departmental publications which the Victorian Government Printing Office does not print or sell and source of supply, and it is recommended (R.18 p.32) that the Government Printer be asked to do this. It is also recommended (R.19 p.32) that the Government Printer be asked to ensure that all printing of Bills emanating from both houses are included in the list. Bibliographic detail for current publications appears to be quite adequate; it would be helpful to include in the section headed "Previously listed publications" the date of publication of each item.

The W.A. Government Printer issues a *Quarterly price list and information sheet* and appears to list only legislation and the Government gazette. It is recommended that he be urged to list all publications for which he is responsible. (R.20 p.32)

It is recommended that the Northern Territory Government Printer be requested to compile a retrospective list of his publications issued from July 1978, and for a list of current publications which he prints/distributes/sells to be compiled on a regular basis, i.e. not less than quarterly. (R.21 p.33)

Since the *Copyright Act*, Cabinet decisions, Treasury circulars etc. are not working adequately where they relate to centralised production, deposit etc., it is recommended that ways of enforcing these provisions be looked into. (R.22 p.34)

It is recommended that a comparative evaluation be made between *ANB* and *AGP* and between the state sections of these two bibliographies and the state lists, with regard to timeliness and comprehensiveness. Only in the light of the findings of such an investigation can an informed recommendation be made for the expansion, continuation or cessation of these various lists. (R.23 p.35)

It is recommended that simultaneously with the suggested evaluation, discussions be held with the National Library to see if it would be possible to raise the priority of *AGP*, to issue it more frequently and more speedily, and to enlarge its scope. (R.24 p.35)

It is recommended that discussions be held with the National Library on the possible ways of improving *AGP*, with special reference to the following:

(a) the possibility of compiling a more comprehensive bibliography, that is *AGP* expanded to include separate categories for local and intergovernmental publications

(b) the inclusion of subordinate legislation

(c) the inclusion of all printings of bills emanating from each house of all legislatures, including explanatory memoranda

(d) the recording of bills under the heading of the appropriate legislature

(e) the issuing of *AGP* on a monthly basis, in mimeographed form, unindexed, but including information about agency name changes

(f) the continued inclusion of contributed entries

(g) the continuation of the printed quarterly and annual cumulations

(h) the inclusion of all publications over 2 years old, if not previously listed

(i) the inclusion of publications of limited distribution and not available for distribution, with a note regarding limitations

(j) the possibility of *AGP* being made available as a computerised data base through AUSINET. (R.25 pp.35-36)

Should it become clear, after the evaluation of the list and discussion with the National Library, that the state library lists are necessary, as well as *AGP* then it is recommended:

(a) that a request be made to the State Library of Tasmania for *TGP* to be resumed

(b) that a request be made to the WA Parliamentary Library for the continuation of *OPWA*.

(c) that the specific recommendations for the various state lists which follow be made

(d) that the National Library be requested to expand *AGP* to include categories for local and intergovernmental publications; that it include subordinate legislation; that federal material be notified monthly in a mimeographed list; that the printed quarterly and annual indexed cumulations continue; that publications over 2 years old be included; that it continue to include contributed entries; that it include publications of limited distribution, with a note regarding limitations. (R.26 p.36)

It is recommended that the State Library of New South Wales be asked to list in *New South Wales official publications* the publications of municipal shire councils; to include publications of limited distribution and those not available for distribution, maps and films, rules, regulations, by-laws and ordinances; a list of periodicals; to ensure that all printings of Bills are included; to include ISBNs and ISSNs as part of the bibliographic description; to include an index to titles and subjects, and notes regarding administrative changes. (R.27 p.40)

It is recommended that the Library Board of Queensland be asked to include in *Queensland government publications* local government publications; audiovisual material; Statutory rules; to ensure that all printings of Bills are included; to include publications which are not available for distribution; ISSNs and ISBNs; information regarding structural changes to government and agency name changes; to produce an annual cumulation (from 1977) with indexes to personal authors, titles and subjects; to try to issue *QGP* more promptly (the latest issue held by VLU and VSL in September 1979 is the last quarter of 1978). (R.28 p.41)

It is recommended that limited distribution material be included in *Monthly list of publications of South Australian interest*; plus publications which are not available for distribution; that individual annuals be recorded; that there be an annual list of periodicals; that individual Bills (all printings), Acts and Statutory rules be included; that the State Library be encouraged to pursue more actively and list SA government publications; that ISSNs and ISBNs be included, also source of supply and price. (R.29 p.42)

It is recommended that local government publications, with no lower limit to page numbers be included in *Victorian government publications*; that all printings of Bills emanating from each house be included; that open entries for new serials be carried forward from the monthly issues to the annual cumulation; that publications over 2 years old be included; that a title and subject index be added to the annual cumulation. (R.30 p.43)

It is recommended that the Western Australian Parliamentary Library be asked to consider broadening the coverage of *OPWA* to include the publications of "certain autonomous statutory bodies" which are at present excluded, as well as those of local government authorities; that it include films, maps, and publications of limited distribution and those not available for distribution; that individual Parliamentary papers, Bills (all printings) and Statutory rules be included; that the form of entry for serials be standardised, that ABS WA Office publications be excluded (the WA office provides an adequate list, as well as ABS in Canberra), or else that it be clearly indicated that they are federal government publications; that there be no cut-off date for older publications; that the standard of bibliographic description be raised and applied consistently; that items which have not been sighted be included and marked with a symbol; that access be provided to personal names; that an annual cumulation be made; and that notes regarding structural changes in government be included. (R.31 pp.44-45)

It is recommended that the clerks of papers of the parliaments of Queensland and Victoria be written to, asking them to take the necessary steps to have indexes to their papers compiled and published; that the clerk of the papers of the W.A. Parliament be written to, to ascertain what plans exist for the indexing of papers from 1957 on. (R.32 p.46)

It is recommended that means be found to compile retrospective bibliographies for each of the five colonies other than WA from their inception to 1900. It is to be hoped, not only from the point of view of government publications, that work will be resumed on the retrospective national bibliography, 1901-1950; it may be worth while approaching the National Library to ask them to consider a separate sequence for government publications arranged by jurisdiction and corporate author, and incorporating notes about administrative changes. (R.33 p. 47)

It is strongly recommended that the National Library be asked to include entries for Australian government publications in NUCOM. (R.34 p. 47)

References

1. This point was referred to by Jeff C. Bolto in Bibliographic control by AGPS. [Unpublished paper presented to the Seminar on Australian Government Publications, LAA Conference, Canberra, August 31, 1979]

2. See Cherns, J.J. *Official publishing; an overview: an international survey and review of the role, organisation and principles of official publishing.* Oxford, Pergamon Press, 1979, (Guides to official publications, v.3), p.295.

3. Johansson, Eve. *Current British government publishing.* London, Association of Assistant Librarians, South East Division, 1978, p.6.

4. Pross, August Paul and Pross, Catherine A. *Government publishing in the Canadian provinces; a prescriptive study.* Toronto, University of Toronto Press [1972] p.17.

5. See Fullerton, Jan. 'Bibliographic control of Australian government publications'. In Seminar on Government Publications, Hobart, 1978. *Government publications; papers presented to a seminar held at the School of Librarianship, Tasmanian College of Advanced Education, 9-10 September 1978.* Hobart [School of Librarianship, T.C.A.E.] 1978, p.35.

6. *Ibid.* p.35.

7. See Cope, R.L. 'Desiderata in Australian national bibliography'. In Australian Advisory Council on Bibliographical Services. New South Wales Regional Committee. *Concepts of Australian national bibliography; papers prepared for a round-table discussion at the University of New South Wales on 29th October, 1973.* Sydney, Library of New South Wales, 1974, p.70.

Introductory remarks by A.E. Miller

As you will realize from the introduction to my paper, it was prepared for the AACOBS Working Party on Bibliography as a position paper on the bibliographical control of Australian government publications, with a series of recommendations for action. It was completed almost a year ago now, and has had the benefit of comments of a number of colleagues, in particular members of the WPB. Despite its age, it was thought to be a useful paper to present to this Conference, and that it would provide a worthwhile basis for discussion. There have been few developments or changes in the past 12 months, and I will make passing reference to those which are of any consequence.

Several basic issues arise from my paper, and in summary, I think that there are three things we should consider now. Firstly, do we want or should we expect our government printers/publishers to attempt to list all government publications of their jurisdiction, or only those which they print and/or sell and/or arrange for the printing? Secondly, do we require the multiplicity of library bibliographies? Thirdly, do we require government printers/publishers lists and bibliographies compiled by libraries?

Starting with the third question, a matter to which I did not refer in my paper, but which has come up for discussion more recently, I think without any doubt that we require both government printers' lists and library bibliographies. Government printers' lists are designed to provide immediate notification of availability of publications placed on sale, and in the case of the AGPS, of those publications which are free as well. An essential quality of these lists is speed; a very detailed description of each item is of lesser importance. On the other hand, in library bibliographies more bibliographical detail is required, and they are inevitably involved in the problems of establishing headings for the various issuing bodies and relating one to another by means of references, history notes, etc., all of which slows down the rate of compilation. Although much of the material listed is identical, the purpose is different; speed is important for selection and acquisition purposes, detail for cataloguing and reference purposes. In both Canada and Britain, discussions have been going on for some years regarding the merging of *Canadian government publications* and *Canadiana*, and the HMSO lists and *BNB;* in neither case does anything seem to have been achieved. It is possible that some of the duplication of effort on the part of the AGPS and the National Library could be reduced, and discussions along these lines could well be worthwhile. However, I consider the merging of the AGPS lists and *Australian government publications* to be out of question. Perhaps we will be able to return to this topic during discussion.

Moving now to the lists produced by government printers/publishers, we should consider what our expectations are, or perhaps what our optimistic hopes are. I consider that as a minimum, they should list all publications which they print and/or sell. As far as I can ascertain, AGPS and two of the state government printers do this, and in addition, AGPS lists its free publications. The other four state government printers do not compile regular or complete lists of their publications; in some cases, partial lists can be picked up from time to time in places like the government gazette of the state. It is I think a deplorable state of affairs when

66

access to this important material is so difficult. I also argue strongly for a listing of all those publications for which the printer is responsible in any other way, and those publications for which the printing is arranged; obviously records must be held for this material, giving the printer the means for checking, and to include these publications in the lists would surely not be a great additional effort.

More contentious are the publications of their jurisdiction for which the government printer is in no way responsible. So far, the only listing of non-printer/publisher material by government printers or publishers is the inclusion in the AGPS lists of a very small amount of material published by statutory authorities and available for sale by the AGPS. As I understand it there is no systematic approach to the inclusion of this material and clearly one cannot rely on identifying non-AGPS publications in AGPS lists.

I admit that I am being idealistic in my wish to see considerably greater bibliographical control at source. I do not envisage any greater centralization of production, but I would very much like to see centralized bibliographical control. I realize that there would be many problems to overcome, problems similar to those which the National Library and state libraries experience when acquiring the material for their own libraries and for inclusion in their own bibliographies. I also realize that considerable additional expense would be involved. But there has already been considerable public expense in the production of these publications and it does not seem just if the public is to remain in ignorance of their existence. The USGPO, with the benefit of legislative backing has made considerable strides in this direction. As I said, I admit that I am being optimistic and idealistic; but if we ask for the earth, we may get some of it; if we do not ask, we may well not get anything.

I have written in some detail about the several lists compiled by the AGPS. While not denying, and being appreciative of, the tremendous improvements which have been made to them over recent years, I would like to see further improvements. Several of my recommendations, which I will not repeat now, relate to the carrying forward of particular categories of material into the various cumulations of the lists: at present not all publications are recorded in all versions of the AGPS lists. I would also like a change to the arrangement, so that the executive publications are arranged by issuing body, with a detailed index, instead of the rather mixed but basically title approach which exists at present. I have also made recommendations regarding the details of each entry.

Now to consider the third issue: do we require the multiplicity of library bibliographies? As matters stand at present I think we do; I think we need both *Australian government publications* and the state library lists. However, in the not too long term, I would like to see *AGP* expanded to include those categories not listed at present, such as subsidiary legislation and local government publications, for it to be compiled and issued on a monthly basis with quarterly and annual cumulations, and for the various state libraries to submit entries for inclusion. It is now several years since *AGP* ceased to be purely an accession list of the National Library and accepted contributed entries for inclusion. It would be a wise move to carry this further and for the state libraries to cease their own bibliographies, thus eliminating the considerable duplication of effort, and instead, for them to supply the information to the National Library on a regular basis. There are a number of ifs in this proposition, and unless all these suggestions can be put into practice, I would be most reluctant for the cessation of any of those state lists which do still exist.

One recent development in library bibliographies has been the introduction in *Victorian government publications* from the beginning of this year of analytical entries, and another addition is of notes regarding administrative changes, notes which are not necessarily related to the publications recorded in that issue. Although I am not convinced that a bibliography is the most suitable place for such notes, it does fill the gap in providing up-to-date information regarding the structure of government. At the federal level, the deficiency was clearly shown by the Senate Standing Committee on Finance and Government Operations in 1978 when it identified 241 statutory authorities, of which only 198 were listed in the then current *Commonwealth government directory*. While by no means dismissing the various government gazettes, only the *Commonwealth government gazette* really spells out new administrative arrangements from time to time, and none of the gazettes relinquishes this information speedily. Although a conference on bibliography is possibly not the place to say it, I think it is important, because of the heavy reliance on government directories that any work with government publications involves, that efforts be made for the compilation of both more complete and more rapidly updated government directories. As a start, I would like to propose that the *Commonwealth government directory* be considered as a candidate for inclusion in the AUSINET data base, in order to make up-to-date information more readily available.

To conclude, I would like to mention one recent and exciting development which has been the setting up of the AGPS-AACOBS Liaison Committee (AALC). Similar in intent, though very much smaller than the HMSO Services Working Party, which has been functioning since the early 70s, its chief aim is to provide a forum for discussion for the library profession and the AGPS. In its terms of reference, it is stated that AALC shall be established to provide a permanent mechanism for the exchange of views on matters of common interest concerning Australian government publications, and to identify problems in the provision of access to Australian government publications, in particular in their bibliographic control and distribution, and to discuss possible solutions. Its first meeting is to be held in a couple of weeks. It seems to me that there is a growing understanding by the library profession and government printers/publishers of mutual problems, and I hope that through AALC and in other ways this rapport will increase.

Prepared response by R. Cope

Firstly I would like to thank Miss Miller for her paper - it has that clarity and thoroughness which is characteristic of everything Miss Miller undertakes. Because Ian Royal is following my response, I will confine my remarks mainly to those aspects of government publications which do not concern the National Library.

I do not think there would be much disagreement with the general issues raised in the paper. Miss Miller has said that she is idealistic - she

68

certainly is. I am horrified to hear that she is also a centralist - I am certainly not and that is one issue to which I want to refer later.

The first point I would like to make is that it is all very well for librarians to tell government printers and others what they should be doing with their lists. However, the library profession has not been very outstanding in its own treatment of government publications, either bibliographically or in the reference use of them. There was a very interesting development in the United States some years ago when the Superintendent of Documents looked into the question of the depository collections in the various university libraries and other libraries in the United States. They surveyed how libraries were treating government publications which they received gratis in great quantities and they uncovered many scandals. The publications were simply not controlled; many of them were not even unpacked. If librarians want to be listened to by government printers and public authorities they must demonstrate that their own house is in order.

A great part of Miss Miller's paper was concerned with *AGP*, with the AGPS and with the bibliographies of the National Library. Miss Miller points out that a great deal has been achieved in recent years and we are all very grateful for the effort put into bibliographic control by the National Library and the AGPS. However, one of the things that is still unsatisfactory is the lack of readily available information about the activities of AGPS itself, and we would all welcome an annual report from AGPS which would keep us abreast of current developments.

One thing I wish to discuss is the recommendation that the variant form of bills be listed. There are problems in this area including the problem of what is a "publication". Miss Miller reflects on that in her paper and it is a very important point as well as a very moot one. Certainly in government circles one often comes across the attitude "why are you interested in that particular document - it is not a publication and we do not consider it one". With regard to the bills, the variant forms in which bills appear are not generally available other than to members of parliament. I do not consider the variant forms of bills need listing, mainly because they are not available to the public and, in my view, they are not publications. I would prefer our energies to be channelled into identifying documents which are publications, but which tend to be missed. I adopt the same attitude towards subordinate legislation. Although Miss Miller has recommended that subordinate legislation be listed more fully, it would be more advantageous to encourage the publishing of all subordinate legislation.

You will have noticed the definition by the Prosses on what is an official publication. The definition on Page 37 interested me greatly and this issue requires further thought and discussion. One of the points I would like to raise in this context is whether the definition is too narrow. For example, how does material such as environmental impact studies fit in with that definition? Are they official publications or not? AACOBS has already directed its attention to this issue and they present a very difficult aspect of our work.

Another point Miss Miller discusses briefly is the lack of statistical data about official publications. We do not really know what is the quantity of official publishing in Australia although we may make shrewd guesses and wild surmises. It is important that this position be rectified.

One of the most interesting aspects of Miss Miller's paper and of her introductory remarks are her references to duplication of effort. Miss Miller is keen on centralizing bibliographical activity via the National Library and even perhaps by AGPS itself. I do not share that attitude because official publications are very difficult to identify, even for those people working within the jurisdiction concerned. Those of you who are departmental librarians will, I am sure, have come across the experience that the department does not even send its publications to its own library. Bibliography by its nature is an operation that lends itself to a multiplicity of approaches and there are advantages in having decentralized approaches to the bibliography of official publications. Official publications are of interest to various sections of the population and it is perhaps more prudent to emphasize the control, the collecting at the local level and also the bibliography at the local level with the subsequent comprehensive listing at the national level. I do not consider that the National Library is close enough to any of the states to be able to get the material with the degree of reliability that one expects from a national bibliography.

Another point that Miss Miller has mentioned, in drawing up what might be ideal parameters of a bibliography of official publications, is the listing of ISBNs and ISSNs. If we could get them listed, well and good, but it would be better if we could first get publishers to include them in their publications. Many official publications do not carry them.

I have said that I believe we should encourage bibliography at the local level. I do not think Miss Miller or anyone would disagree with that. I was interested in the example of *Official publications of Western Australia* which was compiled by the Western Australian Parliamentary Library. This is one of the difficulties that besets this field. That Library has undertaken this as a labour of love and like lots of labours of love when love grows cold the list dies. I am not sure whether love has grown cold in Western Australia, but I think it is very likely. We know love has grown cold in Tasmania. These things do happen and my feeling is that if the library profession believes these publications to be important we should do something about controlling them ourselves. I do not think we can really suggest that the National Library, because of its vast resources which might not be as vast as some of us imagine, should undertake that burden, and I do not believe the National Library should for the reason outlined above.

An issue not touched on in Miss Miller's paper to any great extent and which deserves some consideration are the publications by parliaments. Parliaments are laws unto themselves and they do publish a lot of material which is often very difficult to identify. Some consideration should be given to this particular problem.

One suggestion I would like to make is that the regional committees of AACOBS whose membership is quite broad should from time to time consider inviting participation by publishers of official publications. Certainly the government printers should be invited to attend meetings when matters of interest to the government printer are on the agenda. We need to remember that government printers do play a key role and yet contact with them is negligible.

With regard to the consolidated index of parliamentary papers (Recommendation 32 Page 46) I think that this is an area where the state libraries should take a more active interest and perhaps act as intermediaries for AACOBS.

Finally, I think the suggestion made by Miss Miller for better directories of government administration must be clear to us all. Not all states are well served in this respect and of course one of the difficulties is that those directories that do exist are often very late in appearing. If this meeting were to achieve nothing more than to point out to public authorities the need for such directories, I think a lot would have been gained.

Prepared response by I. Royal

May I first say on behalf of the National Library how grateful and respectful we are of Miss Miller's expertise and enthusiasm in the area of government publications. The Library commends Miss Miller in the highest terms on the breadth of scope, the detail, accuracy and generosity of judgement displayed in the paper.

I have limited my response to two areas:

1. Comment on the general position of the paper
2. Specific comments on statements and recommendations relating to *AGP* and *ANB*.

The survey pinpoints admirably the gaps in the bibliographic control of Australian government publications. However, if all of the recommendations were fully implemented, the system would be duplicative. As an inventory of inadequacies the paper is excellent; as a strategy for national bibliographic control for the 1980s it is unrealistic. Priorities need to be established among the recommendations, concessions may even need to be made and certain projects and objectives subordinated to others.

The paper itself contains the key to a structured, workable system of bibliographic control which avoids the duplication of the recommendations. The pity is that it is dismissed as a "theoretical ideal". I refer to Page 35 where Miss Miller speaks of a system whereby state libraries replace their listing with prompt notification to the National Library which responds by publishing promptly an "expanded and more comprehensive national bibliography of Australian government publications". Incidentally the developed shared cataloguing capability of the Australian Bibliographic Network promises to fulfil this ideal beyond the expectations expressed in the paper.

The concern of much of my response focuses upon the paradigm of *ANB* and *AGP* being the adequate and the only necessary instruments of bibliographic control of government publications in Australia, with the strength of the state institutions contributing to their effectiveness, not duplicating them, and the AGPS and government printers' lists remaining as sales and publicity services, not instruments of comprehensive bibliographic control.

This paper, and most discussion of bibliography, seem to concentrate upon secondary issues and to overlook the primary and fundamental phase of bibliographic control, that is, the developed systematic bibliographic control of documents within the government departments, authorities and agencies from which they originate. The national listings will never record systematically a department's publications which that department itself does not know about and where the publishing centres themselves have little notion of legal deposit, let alone ISBN, ISSN, CIP and other vital links in the national bibliographic chain.

From my limited observation of information control within publishing departments, I am aware of how uneven it is and how much needs to be achieved. Information control within publishing authorities does not just happen as if by magic - even with the powerful magic of legal deposit and PSB directives. It is achieved only following the realization, from the permanent head and throughout the department, that information, especially published documents generated from departmental research, is a resource, like finance, which should be accounted for and managed by trained staff with a developed methodology. This matter of systematic information control will become even more important and urgent with the pressures of freedom of information. I believe that the library profession has a role, albeit limited, in initiating awareness of the need for information control and in developing its methodology. The humble departmental library is a vital link in this endeavour but it will always be a total departmental commitment and activity.

Now to specific responses to statements and recommendations of Miss Miller's survey:

Pages 26, 27. Miss Miller raises questions about the "time lag between production and listing" of material in *ANB* and *AGP*.

From surveys conducted over the past two years the average time taken from the receipt of a title to the appearance of an entry in the published *ANB* is 20 weeks. This time varies greatly and is determined by a system of processing priorities within which government reports occupy a very high position. Most are listed in *ANB* within eight weeks of receipt.

Forty per cent of *AGP* entries are compiled from *ANB* cards received in *AGP* from the card service. This accounts for some delays in *AGP* listings, especially for obscure limited interest technical reports. There are no working backlogs in *AGP* but delays occur in awaiting the closing date of the quarterly, editing the main sequence and index, typing the contents manually and printing. Compilation and production time of a quarterly is about 24 weeks and for an annual cumulation is about 37 weeks. This year it was 27 weeks. In three years we have reduced the production time by 22 weeks from a publication date of 6 December 1978 (1977 annual) to 3 July 1980 (1979 annual). This has been achieved without substantial staff increases by careful daily scheduling of work on the critical path of production and by improvements to the manual methods of compilation and editing.

It is possible that *AGP* will be produced within an automated system at some time after 1980. Initial feasibility studies have highlighted certain, not insurmountable, problems but the matter takes its place among the Library's priorities for computerised treatment. Automation would make possible the mounting of *AGP* on AUSINET, although I hasten to add that a significant file of government publications already exists on AUSINET in the *ANB* data base.

Regardless of all the improvements to *AGP's* currency so far achieved as well as those anticipated following automation, *AGP's* currency is nevertheless seriously adversely affected by its quarterly frequency. The Library views this selection hiatus seriously and in consequence is considering the production of a monthly checklist to fulfil a purely selection function.

Page 34. Miss Miller states "For state publications the state lists are more comprehensive".

I cannot see how this can be since the National Library uses state lists to claim material and in the case of *VGP* actually uses it as a source of contributed entries. Furthermore the National Library frequently receives titles apparently not deposited in state libraries. Except where there are known scope differences it is surely a matter of currency rather than comprehensiveness.

Page 35. Calls for a comparitive currency and coverage study between *ANB, AGP* and the state lists.

These would be better conducted after the decision is made regarding the National Library's monthly checklist.

Recommendations on Page 35 (a)-(c) refer to specific categories of material which should be included in a "more comprehensive bibliography that is AGP expanded".

Specific categories referred to are local government publications, subordinate legislation and all printing of bills. The principle of the inclusion of all government publications in a single unified listing is acknowledged as unassailable. The Library agrees in principle that local government publications would be appropriately listed in *AGP*. Subordinate legislation, especially of the state governments, is clearly inadequately listed and indexed and it too could very profitably be included in *AGP*. Curiously Miss Miller identifies Australian Conciliation and Arbitration Commission *Awards* and *Victorian labour determinations* as omissions from *AGP* (Page 39(c)) but does not recommend their inclusion. Is this an admission that perhaps one cannot include everything after all? There are about 1700 ACAC *Awards* published annually.

The reasons for reluctance to expand dramatically the scope of *AGP* are practical - simply a lack of staff resources to handle the extra workload. But even if we were miraculously blessed with one or two more staff, AGP would still not be able to handle a significantly enlarged file without endangering the present finely balanced production schedule with disastrous consequences for *AGP's* timeliness of appearance. This is mainly because of the "diseconomies of scale" of a larger card file and the essential fact that editing the *AGP* main sequence and index is the function of one specialist person and these processes are unavoidably on the critical path of *AGP's* production - every extra day spent on those processes means that *AGP* comes out a day later. The only hope of breaking this volume and production time nexus is in the automation of *AGP*. In that situation we could perhaps consider the inclusion of local government publications and subordinate legislation. (Of the latter there are an estimated 2500 entries per annum listed in both quarterly and annual *AGP* - a 30 per cent increase in printed entries). It is clear that much basic bibliographic work needs to be done on local government publications in Australia - a mere 31 per annum appeared in *ANB* 1972-79. Much of this spade work could be done by state institutions, encouraged by AACOBS.

Intergovernment publications are at present listed in *AGP*, most in the Commonwealth of Australia section. It is admitted that this may not always be appropriate and that consideration should be given to a separate category in *AGP* for intergovernmental publications. I counted at least 42 and at most 119 intergovernmental publications in the 1978 issue of *AGP*. The problem is with border line cases and I believe that a definition needs to be agreed upon before this project is implemented. A definition should refer to the criteria of origin, basis of membership, function and responsibility. The sources of information available to determine the governmental or intergovernmental status of a body are not always reliable e.g. *Australian government directory* 1979 describes the Australian Plague Locust Commission (APLC) as follows: It "was established by agreement between the Commonwealth Government and the governments of the states concerned to take action to prevent the development of locust outbreaks that are a potential threat to more than one state". There are representatives on the APLC from the governments of New South Wales, Victoria, Queensland and South Australia. It seems to fulfil all of the criteria of an intergovernmental body by any rudimentary definition but in fact operates within the Federal Department of Primary Industry and reports to Parliament through the Minister. Also, are the joint communiques of heads of governments (interstate or international) and international treaties or interstate agreements intergrovernmental publications?

Page 35(c) calls for inclusion of "all printings of bills".

This can probably be done. From a cursory investigation of the situation with Federal bills, it is clear that third reading prints of bills can be identified and streamed for *AGP* listing and that the burden of so listing would not be overwhelming.

(d) "bills under the heading of the appropriate legislature".

At present *AGP* has a reference from the legislature to Laws, Statutes etc. but the procedure could easily be changed if this was known to be the consensus of *AGP* users or this Conference.

Recommendation (e) Page 35 refers to the "issuing of *AGP* on a monthly basis in mimeograph form, unindexed, but including information about agency name changes".

This is the key issue of this discussion. Successful implementation of this recommendation would probably obviate the necessity for the monthly state listings and would place the AGPS and state government printer lists in a new light. The matter has been under serious consideration for some time and the most likely possibility, if such a list eventuates, would be a photo-reduced checklist including only entries not previously listed in *ANB* or any state listing, excluding serials except annual reports and including contributed entries.

The publication would be separate from *AGP*, and its scope and its editorial standards would be different. It would be unnumbered and unindexed and speed of production would be a prime consideration. It would be intended purely as a current selection aid - a gap filler to be used with *ANB* and the surviving states' lists, together with the AGPS and government printer lists, for the selection and acquisition of Australian government publications.

Page 36 (f) refers to "the continued inclusion of contributed entries".

The National Library takes this opportunity to express its view that although this has caused us more work, it has been an unqualified success. No longer can it be said that *AGP* is merely a checklist of the National Library's holdings of government publications.

Page 36 (g) "the continuation of the printed quarterly and annual AGP".

The National Library supports this and sees no immediate threat to either the quarterly service or the printed presentation. However, *AGP* must still face the challenge of viability common to all such specialist printed publications.

Page 36 recommendation (h) refers to "the inclusion of all publications over 2 years old, if not previously listed".

In practice this proposition is held as a guideline rather than a rule. Neither is it very strictly applied nor is it lightly disregarded. It is based upon the not unrealistic principle that what a user does not expect to find in a bibliography he will not look for. Thus, even if publications of more than two years vintage were listed, the probability is that they would never be found in the printed annual bibliographies. I am aware that as an absolute principle this is somewhat vulnerable but it is not unrealistic in practice for the vast majority of cases. Ultimately, however, the reason for excluding older publications from *ANB* and *AGP* is more down to earth. We do not have the resources to search and establish whether a particular publication of more than two years vintage has or has not been previously listed.

Recommendation Page 36 (i) refers to "the inclusion of publications of limited distribution and not available for distribution".
Where limited distribution is due solely to the fact that a few copies only were printed for distribution these are listed in *AGP*. Somewhat stricter criteria of availability apply for material to be listed in *ANB*. Limited distribution notes do appear in *ANB* (e.g. 1979 annual at 016.025171 and 016.63) and such notes are not knowingly excluded from *AGP*. Availability notes, where these may be useful and are available to us, will also appear in *AGP*.

Embargoed, confidential and security classified documents are never knowingly listed in *AGP* or *ANB*. The Library holds, with the utmost seriousness, the bond of confidence it has with suppliers of publications, particularly government documents as this is the basis of the co-operation which guarantees the future supply of publications. Blatant and deliberate breaches of this confidence have devastating effects.

With reference to *ANB* (Page 38) there are a few small errors which need correction. *ANB* does include limited distribution material and notes to that effect, (see *ANB* annual 1979 at 016.64) subject indexes appear in all issues except weeklies, and information about structural changes in government is given in references in the author/title/series index.

It is a constructive observation that there is in *AGP* no definition of "an official agency, nor have excluded categories been noted". (Page 38) Consideration is being given to the inclusion of a definition similar to that on Page 37. Also, additions to the notes under the heading SCOPE in the *AGP* 'Introduction' are under consideration; again these are along the lines suggested by the paper.

If such inclusions and exclusions were listed I see little further point in including a definition of "publication" as referred to in recommendation (b) Page 39. But nevertheless it is under consideration for *AGP*.

Page 39 contains this puzzling observation "Thus, in some respects, *AGP* will come to be a more substantial source of bibliographical data for state government publications than *ANB*".

Surely it is now. Not only does *AGP* list every government publication (except local government) in *ANB* it also lists monographs of less than five pages, current serial publications, annual reports, legislation including bills from all states and contributed entries from four out of seven states - none of which is in *ANB*. Even at present 60 per cent of entries in *AGP* are not in *ANB*.

I shall conclude on the crucial issue with a quotation from the paper and a comment. First the quotation: "other difficulties arise out of the relative incompleteness of *ANB* and the great delay in the appearance of *AGP* ... These factors greatly restrict their usefulness for selection purposes or for checking current issues of official publications". (Page 40).

The Library is acutely aware that the publications of government bodies in Australia are often produced in limited print runs which are quickly exhausted and that the quarterly *AGP* does not serve adequately as a selection tool for identifying these publications. It is for this reason that such serious consideration is being given to the monthly selection checklist of Australian official publications.

General discussion

R. Sharman opened the discussion by commenting on the question of contributed bibliographic records from the states. He pointed out that although he was unsure of the precise status of *Official publications of Western Australia* it was unlikely that publication would be resumed. It was suggested that if this were the case the best solution would be to follow the Tasmanian example and to forward bibliographic records to the National Library for inclusion in *AGP*.

This suggestion was followed by a general discussion on whether state institutions had a role to play in contributing entries to a centralized national bibliography. The view was expressed by R. Cope that although there appeared to be no objection in principle, it was difficult to gauge the effectiveness of such a system of contributed entries.

In response to these remarks, I. Royal reiterated that the state libraries were closer to the source of state government publications than the National Library which was keen to take advantage of this situation. It was noted that the acceptance of this system meant that the examination of the document by the body responsible for the national listing was sacrificed for the sake of expediency. Participants were informed, however, that the National Library claimed relevant material when contributed entries were received and that entries were included in *AGP* following the receipt of such publications.

A. Gilbert queried whether there was any conflict in the National Library participating in a contributory entry scheme for *AGP* and not for *ANB*. Following I. Royal's comment that the National Library considered *ANB*, as a national bibliography, to have a higher status than *AGP*, D.H. Borchardt expressed the opinion that it was unfortunate that the National Library did not appear to give the publications of our own governments the priority which they deserved.

Following up Miss Miller's introductory remarks, S. Routh argued that the Conference should not request government printers to include publications for which they have no printing or publishing responsibility. He commented that although these lists were required for speed and for substantial coverage, government printers should not hold responsibility for a universal type listing because of the deliberate avoidance of administrative law by some departments, the lack of acknowledgement by government printers of their responsibility to list all government publications, and the lack of expertise on their part to provide listings of an acceptable bibliographic standard.

With regard to bills, S. Routh expressed the view that this material should receive a low priority in the area of bibliographical listing if the availability of resources meant priorities needed to be assigned. In support of this argument, it was maintained that other sources such as *Votes and proceedings*, and indexes and guides to legal information provide a substantial guide to the existence of the different stages of legislation.

Replying to these remarks, R. Cope pointed out that it was reasonable to expect government printers to list those publications for which they acknowledged responsibility but there are problems with documents for which government printers were not totally responsible. As far as the

77

various forms of bills were concerned, participants were informed that copies were housed in the archives of each house and that public access to them depended on the parliament concerned. It was noted that bills in the second reading stage could be acquired from the appropriate government printer.

The discussion then centred on the problem of the bibliographical control of publications emanating from local government. In initiating discussion on this topic, D.H. Borchardt sought views on how to improve the delivery of local government publications to state libraries and to the National Library.

D. Fielding referred to the Freedom of Information Bill that was before the federal Parliament and which required each federal department to prepare an annual report which would include a listing of its publications. He commented that one solution to this problem would be to agitate for similar legislation in each state - such legislation would ensure that local governments prepared regular listings of their publications and deposited them in their state and parliamentary libraries.

W. Pinson suggested that another method of achieving bibliographical control was through the executive officer of local government i.e. the town or shire clerk. He added that there were training courses for such officers and it was recommended that attempts should be made to educate those responsible for issuing local government material about the need for some form of bibliographical control.

Following further discussion on the need for public libraries to collect the publications issued by their local authorities, participants noted that the recommendations contained in A. Miller's paper would be transmitted through AACOBS to the appropriate authorities.

SESSION 2

AUSTRALIAN GOVERNMENT PUBLICATIONS

Paper by A.E. Miller - Government Publications Librarian, La Trobe University

Prepared responses by R. Cope - Parliamentary Librarian, New South Wales
I. Royal - Chief Cataloguer, ANB, National Library of Australia

Chairman of Session - D.H. Borchardt, Chief Librarian, La Trobe University

Principal participants in General discussion

D.H. Borchardt - Chief Librarian, La Trobe University

D. Fielding - University Librarian, University of Queensland

A. Gilbert - Western Australian Institute of Technology

W. Pinson - Readers Services Librarian, Warrnambool Institute of Advanced Education

S. Routh - Senior Principal Librarian, Reference Services, University of Queensland

R. Sharman - State Librarian, Library Board of Western Australia

AUSTRALIAN INDEXING SERVICES

D. Abbott

This paper is a reference librarian's paper and has not been written by someone with an expert knowledge of indexing theory. A useful approach, for this AACOBS Conference, I think is to survey the main indexes as they presently exist, to examine the way in which they developed for indications of how to approach the problems of producing future indexes, and to identify gaps in the coverage of the present indexes. The survey is not comprehensive because such a task has been undertaken by the Australian Society of Indexers, which has already conducted a survey and uncovered many indexes which were not widely known.[1]

I have grouped the indexes according to two main categories: general indexes covering politics, current affairs, hobbies, sports, etc.; and special subject indexes which are produced in conjunction with the daily work of certain special libraries. All the indexes provide subject access to Australian serial publications, though many of them include report literature, conference proceedings and some monograph material. The indexes do not cover all Australian serial publications, nor do they cover Australian subject material published in overseas serials publications. *APAIS*, however, does index some articles on Australia published in overseas serials and its entries are the result of daily scanning of all overseas serials received at the National Library. Overseas items on Australia present some difficulty for those Australian libraries which seek to collect all published material on a given geographical area. We have to rely on overseas indexing services to provide access to this material for it would be a well nigh impossible job for Australian indexes. Libraries which are now connected to services such as DIALOG are in a position to retrieve such items conveniently and comprehensively.

What is required of Australian indexing services is effective subject access to Australian serial publications and the existing indexes go a long way towards achieving this.

Some additional coverage of Australian serials is offered by a few overseas indexes but in most cases this is limited to a handful of journals as can be seen in the following table:[2]

Number of Australian journals covered by overseas indexes

Applied science and technology index	NIL
Bibliography/Index of geology	8
Bibliography of agriculture	18
Biological abstracts	223
British technology index	NIL
Engineering index	20
Food science and technology abstracts	30
Fuel abstracts	4
Index medicus	6
Index medicus (special list)	6
INSPEC	30
Metal abstracts	13
Pollution abstracts	7
Science citation index	31

Even though *Biological abstracts* covers a surprisingly large number of titles one should not place great reliance on overseas indexing services for their coverage of Australian serials.

Some Australian indexes cover overseas published material which is not of Australian subject interest. For reasons I shall discuss later both *Guidelines* and *Pinpointer* index a substantial number of overseas titles: 32 per cent and 24.6 per cent respectively of all titles indexed. *CSIRO index* covers material wherever it is published as long as CSIRO is involved. Given that this paper is concerned with indexes to Australian material *CSIRO index* will only be mentioned in passing.

APAIS, the best known and longest established Australian index has since 1945 provided references to the periodical literature in the social sciences and humanities published in Australia, "...as well, it seeks to index material on Australian economic, social, cultural and political affairs from a variety of other periodical and composite sources."[3] There are 200 titles comprehensively indexed in the social sciences and humanities; in the words of the introduction this "...means that all articles whether or not they are by Australians or on Australian topics, are indexed, with the exception of book reviews, notes and news paragraphs, portraits and imaginative literature such as poetry or short stories."[4] This list of 200 periodicals has priority over other Australian publications which are scanned and over overseas publications.

Four full-time staff work on *APAIS* and index 9,5000-13,000 articles per annum. It was one of the first indexes made available on AUSINET, albeit at first as a very small file; now however, it is a worthwhile data base. Even though the staffing is more generous than for most of the other indexes and it is now computerised there are still delays in publishing schedules. An extra incentive to searching *APAIS* online at the end of 1979 was that it avoided the tedious checking of 22 monthly parts of the paper copy. The 1978 annual volume was published at the end of 1979.

The coverage of a general index like *APAIS* is not always going to satisy those wanting a comprehensive coverage of one particular discipline. This is no criticism of *APAIS* so long as it is acknowledged that there is room for more specialised indexes in the social sciences and humanities. The success of *Australian education index* raises the question of whether there is need for a similar coverage of other disciplines. Perhaps it is not as vital to know what is published on psychology in Australia or that there would be anything like the amount there is in education, but there must be a considerable body of unpublished report material in the field. The specialised indexes pursue a particular policy of attempting to ferret out this material; something that *APAIS* could not be expected to do.

In 1978, when *APAIS* was added to AUSINET using a STAIRS format, work also began on an *APAIS* Thesaurus. Library of Congress Subject Headings had been used previously and starting the Thesaurus from scratch meant that the project absorbed staff time to the detriment of *APAIS* indexing. This has contributed to the 25 per cent decline over the last five years in the number of articles indexed for *APAIS*: 13,051 in 1975 down to 9,398 in 1979. The other cause has been the general staff restrictions at the National Library. Ideally the *APAIS* team would like to index 11,000 articles per annum.

The Thesaurus is not yet published and has been developed for use as an in-house tool with *APAIS*; it is not, therefore, a true reflection of the social sciences and humanities but a reflection of the current subject spread of Australian serials. Australian usage is followed and the vocabulary is more colloquial than that of more formally constructed indexing systems. Terms are included in the Thesaurus after they have been assessed on both literary and user warrant. Together with a Name Authority File, which is also maintained by *APAIS*, the Thesaurus would be a logical choice for an Australian newspaper index. R.Stafford's *Australian newspaper index feasibility study*[5] suggests that the *APAIS* Thesaurus be used but since newspaper indexing contains many proper name entries, the Name Authority File would be equally important.

The *Index to current information* published by the Commonwealth Parliamentary Library, is designed primarily for Senators and members but is held in many libraries to complement *APAIS* for current affairs information. A large proportion of the titles indexed are overseas journals and the *Index* is not confined to Australian subject material. It is published fortnightly and therefore can provide more recent material than *APAIS* though its subject coverage is much more limited since it is based on a smaller list of Australian titles.

Pinpointer has been described as covering a rather heterogeneous group of periodicals "...and one may well doubt the usefulness of *Pinpointer* beyond the walls of those libraries for which it is specifically designed."[6] Heterogeneous the collection of journals may be, but the usefulness of the index is not in doubt in public libraries, just as *Readers' guide to periodical literature* is more extensively used in public libraries than in academic libraries. One of the problems with the index is that a greater coverage of this material is required. When discussing the lack of coverage of Australian technology journals later in this paper I will mention the need for an Australian popular technology index similar to *Applied science and technology index*. *Pinpointer*, in covering some of the popular technology magazines, provides limited access but it is by no means adequate. This has little to do with *Pinpointer* and its compiler, the State Library of South Australia, for it is not in a position to enlarge its indexing coverage to that extent, nor to produce another service.

Three library officers and one clerical assistant are involved in the editing and preparation for printing of the index. Like so many publications from state authorities *Pinpointer* is at the mercy of a tardy Government Printer. One issue was in the press for four months whereas it took three to eight weeks when the Library itself was in charge of the printing. Faced with budget cuts following a change of Government in South Australia in 1979, the State Library considered terminating *Pinpointer* as an economy measure. Fortunately this was avoided but *Index to Australian book reviews*, also published by the State Library, will cease publication. In 1977 *Pinpointer* was given a major overhaul, dropping some periodical titles which were not popular, and adding twenty-one new ones. Many of these, for example *Australian home journal* and *Electronics*, are long established periodicals and public libraries had been bedevilled for years with requests for specific articles from back copies of these. Comprehensive indexing was abandoned in favour of concentrating on articles of "...a more practical nature, e.g. handyman, how-to-do-it, craft and hobby, which are areas that often prove elusive in reference work as anyone who has looked for 'How to restring a tennis racket' or 'How to build a brush fence' will know."[7] The change in policy was undertaken with due regard to the coverage of other indexing services: *APAIS*, *Australian science index (ASI)*, and *Guidelines*.

On the basis of the number of titles which are listed as being indexed by more than one service there exists a considerable degree of overlap amongst these general indexes. However, this is a somewhat misleading conclusion because all the services are selective, rather than exhaustive in their coverage of each periodical. *APAIS* in particular differs in this respect in that it has a short list of comprehensively indexed titles as a subset of its full list of indexed titles.

If one accepts *APAIS* as the pre-eminent general Australian index then *Guidelines* has the greatest degree of overlap with 85 per cent of the journals it indexes covered by other Australian indexes. There is nothing unusual in this as far as the editor is concerned because *Guidelines* has always been intended to serve secondary school libraries which, in the main, do not subscribe to *APAIS*. Originally it was envisaged that *Guidelines* would index overseas publications exclusively because school libraries did not subscribe to *Readers' guide to periodical literature*. But they did not subscribe to *APAIS* either so *Guidelines* took on the appearance of an alternative, smaller *APAIS* with 40 per cent of the titles indexed being overseas publications.

Special libraries have been responsible for the development of an important group of Australian indexing services and it is likely that others will emanate from special libraries in future.

In a paper delivered at the LAA Conference in Canberra, 1979, Leslie Symes[8] urged special libraries to co-operate in the development of data bases. A similar theme was the basis of the Special Libraries Section's Biennial Conference in Brisbane in 1978 where several papers outlined the development of *Australian road index (ARI)*, the *Australian earth sciences information system (AESIS)*, and *Australian education index (AEI)*. While *Australian science index (ASI)* is also compiled by a special library, the distinctive feature of the other three is that they are co-operative ventures. Librarians in special libraries are most likely to identify subject areas not adequately covered by indexing services and to be least satisfied with those general indexes which cover a number of fields.[9]

Although *ARI*, *AESIS* and *AEI* started as co-operative ventures, and to varying degrees remain so, the major portion of the work of producing these indexes has devolved upon one organisation.

At the Special Libraries Conference, Mary Bays commented: "Fortunately in the case of the *Australian road index* it was early on acknowledged that co-operative projects work best in fantasy, and that in reality one organisation has to do most of the work."[10] But the establishment of an indexing service is perhaps best done on a co-operative basis even if the contributions decline after a few years of production. In the case of *ARI*, contributing libraries provided 20 per cent of the entries in 1976 and 1977 and by 1978 this had declined to 12 per cent[11] which was chiefly from one or two libraries. *AEI* which began much earlier, in 1958, also started off as a co-operative venture, with the Australian Council of Educational Research (ACER) taking responsibility for publishing and providing staff to collate entries. Contributing libraries collected materials and forwarded entries to ACER, "...thus reducing the cost to any one organisation."[12] ACER assumed full responsibility for *AEI* in the early 1970s when contributions had fallen off, mainly because the number of librarians involved had declined as a result of demands of their own growing libraries.[13]

Despite the decline in contributions to *ARI* from organisations other than the Australian Road Research Board (ARRB), state and federal organisations scan journal titles allotted to them, and are expected to collect material from their own geographic area. ARRB is attempting to include more entries for internal report material and these organisations are in a better position to identify such documents. These items are clearly marked in the data base as being restricted in availability thus leaving the prerogative of release with the issuing body. Sometimes, of course, it is enough to know that work is being done on a particular subject, and to have the names of the personnel involved. *AESIS* also pursues a policy of including unpublished material and obtains this on a co-operative basis: "Such information is contained principally in open-file reports held by the Geological Survey, company reports, and University [and] CAE theses."[14]

The significance of unpublished material for these specialised indexes is shown by the results of a survey conducted prior to the establishment of *AESIS* where it was estimated that 60 per cent of the information available for the index was in unpublished form.[15]

ARRB is exceptional in that it not only produces *ARI* but also provides the Australian input for the international data base IRRD, produced under the auspices of OECD. AARB has also played an important role in the development of AUSINET and contributes *ARI* to AUSINET. *ARI* has another level of involvement with its contributors through seminars on *ARI* held at AARB for users and contributors. It is worth noting that from the outset *ARI* has been built on the same thesaurus and format as IRRD, which is produced from national contributions. This effectively eliminated two of the hurdles which can easily discourage new ventures in the indexing field. The absence of an acceptable thesaurus and format are problems which I shall mention later with reference to an Australian newspaper index.

ARI has been published since 1975 and since 1977 has been available for interrogation on AUSINET. The production of the paper copy index is undertaken on ARRB's own computer not at ACI Computer Services as is the case with *AEI*.

The *AESIS* data base has been developed by the Australian Mineral Foundation (AMF) in co-operation with CSIRO, the National Library, federal and state mining authorities and companies; its co-operative structure is regarded as its sustaining feature.[16] A paper copy index is issued quarterly and there is an annual cumulation on microfiche. *AESIS* has been computer-based from the outset with CSIRO Information Service providing "...total input computing support for the system."17

Retrospective, batch searching is available publicly through AMF at $14 per search or on any CSIRONET terminal. During 1980 the data base will be mounted on AUSINET and will therefore be widely available for online searching.

Unlike *AEI* and *ARI* which utilised or adopted existing thesauri, AMF was encouraged to develop an Australian thesaurus based on an internal AMF thesaurus. According to the Director's introduction to the first edition:

> The question of internal compatibility was raised during the course of the project. Due to the time scales involved in the international work, this Thesaurus has not been able to benefit from the work done so far at the international level. The compability aspect will have to be accommodated through concordances.18

Because of the convenience of being able to use the same search strategies when conducting online searches on an overseas and an Australian data base on the same subject it is preferable to have the same thesaurus. For this reason the editor of *AEI* has been asked to consider using the ERIC thesaurus without change; but even here modification for Australian usage proved necessary for the production of the paper copy version. *AEI* now makes use of the ERIC Thesaurus where Library of Congress Subject headings were used previously. Alterations are made to suit Australian usage and American spelling is being changed where necessary.

AEI has been produced since 1958 and from 1978 it has been available on AUSINET. This is the only index which has made full use of AUSINET and ACI Computer Services to produce both the data base and the paper copy index. The Library of the Australian Council for Educational Research (ACER) produces the index as part of normal library operations and staffing for the *Index* is only equivalent to one person.

One of the most difficult problems in indexes like *AEI* is identifying unpublished material and items which do not enter the mainstream of publishing. *AEI* achieves a good response by sending forms to educationists encouraging them to notify ACER of the results of their work. Response appears to be better when this is done in the interests of *AEI* rather then the ACER Library.

AEI has now established itself so well that other organisations are approaching ACER seeking to utilise the *AEI* format to cover other educational materials. Work has begun on establishing a TAFE materials data base with contact people appointed by TAFE authorities in each state to gather and index TAFE materials. The project is co-ordinated in Adelaide and entries are forwarded to ACER for final editing. TAFE will obtain a tape from ACI and have the index printed by the South Australian Government Printer; one hopes that they fare better than *Pinpointer*.

The Curriculum Development Centre in Canberra has undertaken to establish a national data base of curriculum materials, including all the material from state curriculum centres. The project was abandoned this year and already the N.S.W. Education Department, Curriculum Information Project has made use of the *AEI* data base format and published a *Guide and index to selected materials*. It is quite likely that other curriculum centres will follow this pattern. Tasmania is considering this approach.

It is interesting to observe that *AEI* has almost turned full circle: starting on a co-operative basis it became the full responsibility of ACER and it is now spawning co-operative offshoots through its own example.

One of the advantages of online searching compared with manual searching of indexing services is an improvement in the recall of citations per index term. It is a common feature of the computerised version that there are more index terms assigned to each citation. Not all these descriptors, chiefly the 'minor descriptor' category, are used in the subject index to the printed version of the abstracting or indexing service.

A recent ALA *Library technology report* on 'The economics of on-line bibliographic searching,[19] cites some studies involving MEDLARS searches where an improvement in recall was useful to the searcher. However, Cleverdon's work has shown that there is a point where the number of terms per citation does not lead to a significant improvement in recall.[20] Also, there is a point where precision suffers as the result of this scatter-gun approach to indexing. The Australian indexes which are available online do have a greater number of index terms per citation than previously but have not reached the levels of excess of some US data bases. There is wide variation in depth of indexing ranging from an average of one term per citation in *Pinpointer*[21] up to 8-12 descriptors with citations in *ARI*.[22]

Pinpointer appears to lack indexing depth but the present editor points out that "The length of each issue is doubled by the addition of cross references. These extensive cross references mean that normally each entry needs only one subject heading, but where necessary extra subject headings are allocated."[23]

AEI assigns 5-8 terms per citation which is in marked contrast to ERIC which commonly assigns double that number. *ASI* averages 3 per citation. Until the *APAIS* Thesaurus was developed the indexers were inclined to assign more terms than necessary but in 1979, with the system fully established, it steadied at 2.4 per citation.

With the exception of *Pinpointer* all the Australian indexes seem to have settled upon sensible and adequate levels of indexing depth.

An examination of *ASI* prompts a glance at the indexing coverage of Australian technology journals. In size, *ASI* with 11,000 entries per annum, is on a par with *APAIS*. During the last three years the number of journals scanned for indexing has doubled and in doing this *ASI* has concentrated on technology journals. Since 1976, *ASI* has been produced in Comfiche format and this is now the only hard copy version of the *Index*. *ASI* was mounted on CSIRONET in 1976 and was one of the data bases available on AUSINET when it first started in 1977.

With the equivalent of just over two persons involved at present *ASI*'s staffing situation is barely adequate. The persons involved have other responsibilities but in their indexing they cover four subject groupings: agriculture, physics and mathematics, chemistry, biology and ecology. In addition there are four people in CSIRO divisions who cover sixteen journals not received at the Central Library, as well as a limited amount of indexing which is contracted out.

Production of *ASI* also imposes other strains on CSIRO Central Library. While subscription costs are contained by acquiring many of the journals gratis through the attraction of them being indexed in *ASI*, space in the Library is at a premium and general staffing problems cause delays in journal circulation to CSIRO personnel.

These details of *ASI*'s production are significant because CSIRO has offered to increase further its coverage of Australian technology journals. In a National Library *For information sheet*[24] in January this year it was reported that there could be up to 400 technology serials not indexed. This estimate came from a paper prepared by Hans Zwillenberg for the Industry Information Network Liaison Committee and which in turn was based on the listing of current serials in *Australian advertising rate and data service (AARDS)*. Considering that *ASI* has doubled the number of titles it scans in the last three years, and currently scans a total of 650 titles, 400 more seems a large number of Australian titles. However, of the 400 titles found in *AARDS* not presently indexed, only 13 per cent are "... directed towards a clientele that could be expected to find *ASI* useful."[25] Readers of the *For information sheet* were invited to propose titles for indexing and CSIRO will include new titles if they will increase the usefulness of *ASI* to Australian industry. CSIRO's resources are already stretched in producing *ASI* so it is not surprising that it would "... particularly welcome offers to collaborate in a co-operative indexing venture with *ASI*."[26] The immediate response to the NLA *For information sheet* was poor: two university libraries and two company libraries replied. The university libraries both specified architecture as a field which has considerable scope for improvement in its indexing coverage while the two company libraries supplied lists of titles they would like to see indexed. One of these was from a firm of construction engineers and their list also showed the neglect of building science and architecture. Other fields mentioned were: environment and pollution; engineering and manufacturing; surveying; landscape architecture; medicine; and energy.

In 1978 the State Library of Tasmania prepared a discussion paper for AUSINET on the indexing coverage of Australian technology journals. Although the main concern was the coverage of popular technology, the publications considered are not exclusive to that level. For broad areas of technology, titles which were considered as necessary inclusions in a technology index were selected from *Current Australian serials*. Of 29 titles selected in "engineering and industry" 13 (45%) were indexed, and of 40 titles in "agriculture" 21 (52.5%) were indexed. These lists were compared with *ASI*'s 1977 annual volume and in *ASI* 1979 only two more titles from each subject category have been added to the list of titles scanned.

At the time of writing it is not easy to establish precisely what is indexed in the agricultural field. CSIRO is responsible for the Australian content of the AGRIS data base which has been produced under the auspices of the Food and Agriculture Organisation since 1974. Even though Australia has been one of the major contributors to the data base I suspect that this particular indexing activity is not yet widely known. Currently the data base is accessible on CSIRONET and a limited number of Australian libraries subscribe to the paper copy, but in March 1980 CSIRO generously offered the Australian segment of AGRIS to AUSINET and it will be added to the system during the year.

Until early 1980 the indexing was done under contract by someone who had worked on AGRIS in Vienna. The indexing is now done by George Levick, editor of *ASI*, whose subject specialty is agriculture. One of the benefits of producing AGRIS is the assistance of state departments of agriculture in identifying elusive materials.

Although the exact number of Australian technology journals which are not indexed is unknown, there are indications that even with *ASI*'s expanded coverage there are still many left outside the indexing nets. The number is well below 400 but CSIRO alone may not be able to carry this extra indexing load without the assistance of other organisations. In the building science and architectural field, CSIRO has an established expertise in building science and the technological aspects of architecture but not in the aesthetics of building design. Other organisations could perhaps assist in a subject area such as this.

There remains also the question of indexing popular technology journals. *ASI*'s indexing stops short of the material included in *Pinpointer* and it in turn would have difficulty in adding a large number of extra titles to its coverage. It is so difficult to offer any firm solutions to these problems when services like *Pinpointer* teeter from time to time on the brink of cessation and have difficulty in sustaining their existing commitment.

Another form of indexing service I should like to be able to examine is an Australian newspaper index but regrettably no such service exists. Ever since the *Index to the Sydney morning herald and Sydney mail* ceased publication in 1961 the production of another newspaper index has been the subject of debate. In-house indexes or clippings files of newspapers are compiled by a multitude of libraries, newspaper offices, business firms, government departments, universities and other organisations throughout Australia. The duplication of effort is quite staggering, for hardly any one example is easily available to organisations other than the one compiling the index. Any one organisation which has considered publishing an index has baulked at the cost of establishing one, even though it may eventually get enough financial return to survive.

I shall devote the remainder of this paper to discussing a newspaper index because along with a popular or general technology index I consider the lack of these services the two major gaps in Australian indexing. The problem with newspapers is worse I think, because for most libraries there is no means at all of retrieving the welter of material contained in the major daily Australian newspapers.

The prospect of a newspaper index being available on AUSINET, in conjunction with *Pinpointer* and *APAIS*, which are already there, will be the kind of attraction needed to get public libraries involved in online reference work. Surprisingly, the provision of online services in U.S. public libraries is not extensive. Of 31 of the largest public libraries, serving a population base of at least half a million people only 13, or 41.9 per cent, had online services.[27] Of those thirteen, five had access to the *New York times* Information Bank alone, a very telling indication of the usefulness of a newspaper index in public libraries. To date only two state libraries and one regional public library have joined AUSINET but the picture should alter radically with the addition of a national newspaper index.

The AACOBS Working Party on Bibliography commissioned an 'Australian newspaper index feasibility study' which was prepared by R. Stafford in 1979. His report presents an excellent survey of present indexing activities, previous project proposals, and finishes with a proposal for the establishment of an index. This is to be done on a co-operative basis using the WEST format developed at WAIT by Bryan Kelman as a pilot project for the indexing of the *West Australian*, and the *National times*. Stafford has recommended that this format be adopted by the major libraries already involved in indexing: the state libraries, parliamentary libraries, and the National Library. The expectation is that each would be responsible for the main daily newspaper in its state for items related to that state, but that the *Sydney morning herald*, the *Age*, and *The Australian*, be indexed for all Australian items. The burden thus falls heavily on the libraries in those cities where these papers are published.

Furthermore, each contributor is expected to cover the expense of indexing and mounting data on AUSINET. The total cost for data entry as estimated by ACI Computer Services would be $56,000 p.a. and with update and storage charges this comes to $69,100. The annual cost of producing COM-fiche at ACI/CS would be $51,858. The sales of COM-FICHE or paper copy of the index is envisaged to go a long way towards covering costs but the project would need establishment funding.

Individual contributing libraries would also incur considerable expense through ACI/CS data input charges. Only a handful of foundation members of AUSINET have terminals capable of data input to the system. In this case contributing libraries would, on present rates, have to pay $20/hour for data input at an ACI node. Based on Stafford's estimate of 450 items per week from the *Age* this would cost $23,400 per annum.

The co-operative index would have to be available to other users in hard copy form, and therefore would require a controlled indexing language. Stafford has suggested the new *APAIS* thesaurus as one possibility, but whatever the choice one organisation would have to accept responsibility for its maintenance. At this point I think we need to remember Mary Bay's comments regarding co-operative indexing ventures and their eventual dependence on one organisation. The proposed newspaper index needs co-ordination by one organisation for thesaurus and name authority control, and for the overall supervision of its production, especially the hard copy version. The obvious choice is the National Library but with its severe staffing and financial restrictions and its involvement in other major projects such as the adoption of the Washington Library Network, the Library may not be in a position to accept this role.

Despite all these obstacles I think that the proposal is feasible and, given its importance, all avenues for the establishment of a newspaper index should be explored.

References

1. Garrow, Clyde. A survey of Australian indexing - some observations. [Unpublished paper presented at the Australian Society of Indexers Seminar held on 27 August 1979 as one of the Special Studies Programmes of the 20th Biennial Conference of the Library Association of Australia, Canberra, 1979. A brief report of the survey, which is to be published in *The indexer* appeared in Australian Society of Indexers *Newsletter* 3(3): 3-4, 1979.

2. Zwillenberg, Hans. Desirability of creating an Australian technology index. [Unpublished]

3. *Australian public affairs information service.* Canberra, National Library of Australia, 1945 - Introduction.

4. *Ibid.*

5. Stafford, R. *Australian newspaper index feasibility study.* Canberra, National Library of Australia, 1980. (Networks study, no. 13)

6. Borchardt, Dietrich Hans. *Australian bibliography: a guide to printed sources of information.* 3rd edn Rushcutters Bay, NSW, Pergamon, 1976, p.50.

7. State Library of South Australia. *Administrative notes* 3(4): 6-8, 1978.

8. Symes, Leslie. How small special libraries can cooperate to use and develop information networks. Paper presented to Special Libraries and Automation Special Studies Programme of the 20th Biennial Conference at the Library Association of Australia, Canberra, 1979.

9. Bays, Mary. 'Computers and special libraries: a case study'. In *Seminar on present problems and prespects in library computerisation. Hobart, School of Library and Information Service, Tasmanian College of Advanced Education, 10th November, 1979,* p.1.

10. Bays, Mary. 'The Australian road index - a cooperative venture'. *Australian special library news* 12(1): 34, 1978.

11. *Ibid.* p.36.

12. Findlay, Margaret. 'Australian education index'. *Australian special library news* 12(1): 43, 1978.

13. *Ibid.* p.44.

14. Tellis, D.A. 'The Australian earth sciences information system (AESIS) - a cooperative national venture'. *Australian special library news* 12(1): 39, March, 1978.

15. *Ibid.* p.38.

16. *Ibid.* p.37.

17. *Ibid.*

18. *Australian thesaurus of earth sciences and related terms.* Adelaide, Australian Mineral Foundation, 1976, Introduction.

19. Saffady, William. 'The economics of online bibliographic searching: costs and cost justification'. *Library technology reports* 15(5): 617, 1979.

20. Vickery, V.C. *Techniques of information retrieval.* London, Butterworths, 1970, p.80.

21. *Pinpointer.* Adelaide, State Library of South Australia, 1963- Correspondence with Editor.

22. Bays, Mary. 'Computers and special libraries: a case study'. *Op.cit.* p.3.

23. *Pinpointer. Loc.cit.*

24. National Library of Australia. *For information sheet* no.250, 1980.

25. Zwillenberg, Hans. *Loc.cit.*

26. National Library of Australia. *Loc.cit.*

27. Kusack, James M. 'Online reference service in public libraries'. 18(4): 331, 1979.

Introductory remarks by D. Abbott

The coverage of Australian material in overseas indexing services is limited to the point that we can scarcely rely on them at all.

The broad indexing coverage of Australian serial literature is provided by *APAIS* and *ASI* and both services have improved in recent years. They are now computer-based, *APAIS* has developed its own thesaurus, and *ASI* has considerably expanded its journal coverage and both services are available on AUSINET.

In addition to these all encompassing services there is a range of specialized indexing services each providing access to a specific subject area. Almost all of these have developed in association with a special library and in most cases they have started on a co-operative basis. I think that this formula is a successful means of plugging the indexing gaps in Australia. Already there have been a few new developments along these lines since I wrote the paper, and I want to mention them in a moment.

There are other fields still in need of attention. R.G. Freestone in his contribution to *Twelve essays on Australian subject bibliography*, makes it plain that geography is one of these. *APAIS* is described as having "a desultory geography section" and *ASI* as having a "--- curious list of references geared primarily to land use research and remote sensing".

A notable feature of these services, in fact the majority of these Australian ones, is the way they are produced on a shoe string. Some may think I have concentrated too much on the factors surrounding the production of the services but it was done to highlight that given the available resources, the end product is remarkable.

The absence of an Australian newspaper index, which I commented on at some length, is also noted in the *Twelve essays*. Joan Rydon writes that "the lack of such an index to any of the major Australian dailies is probably the most serious gap among the bibliographical tools available to students of Australian politics". This is one shortcoming that could not be cured with shoe-string arrangements; the ACI Computer Services quotation on the feasibility proposal is enough evidence of this.

As I commented earlier I wish to draw attention to some additional information about which I became aware after preparing the paper.

From a letter by Meg White, Editor of *APAIS*, I quote the following details related to that indexing service:

"In addition to the four full-time indexers *APAIS* also has supervisory and support staff. As *APAIS* production is basically very manual it entails a lot of typing and interfiling. The on-line data base is simply a by-product of the manual production system. This by-product is possible because magnetic cards are used to record information in the manual production of the hardcopy *APAIS* and these cards provide a suitable medium for inputting data in the creation of magnetic tapes for the on-line data base.

Another area where I thought some more information may be of use concerns the size of *APAIS*. At the time I last wrote I sent figures for 1975 to 1979. As we are now indexing for the November 1980 issue it may be of interest for you to know the 1980 annual will have over 11,000 items which is much closer to our 'ideal' target of 12,000 items than was achieved in 1978 and 1979. I think it was probably due to the total change in our indexing system rather than solely to the creation of the thesaurus that the number of items in the 1978 annual was low. Retraining and a whole new approach to indexing particularly in terms of specificity, post co-ordination and on-line information retrieval was necessary. The low 1979 figure was due simply to staff shortages.

Something also that probably is not clear from the summary of statistics sent to you is that entries per article represent the number of "print terms" (major descriptors and names), or terms under which the item appears in the hardcopy *APAIS*, assigned to each item. Other terms, (minor descriptors and identifiers) are also assigned".

In relation to *AGRIS* I have also received additional data from George Levick, Editor of *ASI* and the Australian contribution to *AGRIS*.

"The Australian input is prepared here under my editorial control; essentially the coverage corresponds to the agricultural subset of *Australian Science Index*, with the exception that *Agris* includes monographic materials, and excludes material of purely 'local or ephemeral interest' (some of which is covered by *ASI*). The input is cumulated on a master file that is searchable on CSIRONET. The file dates back to mid-1975. The sample Agrindex you looked at must have been atypical, as the attachment shows: Australia has contributed its share of items over the years".

Another area in which there have been recent developments is in the field of the arts and concerns the Australian Art Information Centre Research Project and the Australian National Gallery Library art data base. Originally the Research Project intended to establish a data base/indexing system covering Australian art but the Project Officer found that the Australian National Gallery Library had already started one. The Art Information Centre now intends to concentrate its efforts on a visual data base, or slide archive, which would be made available on microfiche. The Gallery Library will start its data base in 1982 and mount it on AUSINET. It will cover the fine arts, photography, conservation and possibly the performing arts and include journal articles, exhibition catalogues and items on Australian artists overseas. A start is to be made on the Exhibition information this year and a trial run will be started in manual form to establish details of coverage and form of entry. The data base will cover current material only although retrospective work may be added later since there are a number under way in manual form. There are a number of thesauri which could be used and the Gallery Library can make use of its own Subject Authority File; part of its own computer based catalogue produced by Libramatics.

To make the index available to smaller libraries a hard copy version will be produced using the INDICAT software at ACI/CS, Clayton. Margaret Shaw, the Australian National Gallery Librarian, and Patricia Sabine the Art Information Centre Project Officer, conducted one of the sessions yesterday, 25 August, at the Art Libraries Society Conference in Melbourne. Details of the venture maybe more definite following the Conference.

As the result of an overseas study tour Alan Bundy, Librarian, Footscray Institute of Technology, has produced a proposal called AUSIRC: Australian Sport Information Resource Centre. He has used as his example the Canadian Sport Information Resource Centre, which produces SIRC, a data base which is available on ORBIT.

Items on AUSIRC have appeared in *Australian library news* and *Incite* and the latest issue of *Incite* advertises a Seminar on Information for Sport and Recreation which will be held in November of this year.

The newspaper index proposal, had been referred by AACOBS to the State Librarians' Council which considered it at its March meeting. It was resolved to initiate discussions with the Director-General of the National Library on the relative roles of the state and National libraries in the production of an Australian newspaper index.

The South Australian State Librarian informed me at the State Librarian's Council meeting in Hobart in March that although *Pinpointer* would continue, the *Index to Australian book reviews* may cease publication.

The matter is presently before the SLSA Board and the *Index* will no doubt cease unless the South Australian Government is persuaded to provide extra funding. This will have an effect upon *APAIS* which purposely avoids the inclusion of review type material that is included in the *Index*.

Prepared response by W.D. Richardson

Mr Abbott started by saying that his is a reference librarian's paper and has not been written by someone with an expert knowledge in indexing theory. I am sure it is evident to all the audience that I am neither - in fact some of my colleagues think that I am not even a librarian anymore. What I want to do is go through the paper and perhaps pick up a few of the threads which I believe to be the elements we might want to discuss.

In the beginning of the paper, Mr Abbott comments that he is talking about Australian indexing services, i.e. Australian indexes of Australian serial literature, and he refers to the difficulties which may arise if we were trying to index periodical literature on Australian subjects. Some of the overseas indexing services provide access, very selectively, but it would be a well nigh impossible job for Australian indexes to handle all relevant material published overseas. I think these issues ought to be explored a little more seriously. Although in the social science areas I suspect the significant material is to a large extent published in Australia, I wonder if that is true of some of the other areas of knowledge. For example, in an area such as botany would all the material of interest be in the Australian literature? I suspect not. Perhaps a stage has been reached where librarians should look for services which would provide access to the material of Australian subject content. Mr Abbott points out that *Guidelines* and *Pinpointer* do in fact index a substantial number of overseas titles - 32 per cent and 24 per cent respectively.

Mr Abbott refers to *APAIS* and comments that the machine data base of *APAIS* is now a worthwhile data base. I think that is a kind remark - it is still a very relatively short file. He does point out the value of getting retrospective material into machine data bases as quickly as possible and we may wish to discuss this in greater detail. It is also pointed out, in relation to *AEI*, that there must be a considerable body of unpublished report material for this field. Specialized indexes pursue a particular policy of attempting to ferret out this material although there is little information on their success rate. Again in the social sciences area I suspect that the unpublished report material should receive much more attention.

I was interested in his introductory remarks about the productivity of *APAIS* this year. Are we in fact satisfied, that *APAIS* sees itself operating within a Procrustean bed of 12,000 articles? It seems to me the wrong way round to approach the problem of producing the generalized index to the Australian serial literature i.e. to say it is going to be, in any year, in the region of 12,000 titles. It means that selection is obviously not totally on a qualitative basis. The material which is not included in the hard copy index does not become backlog - it is permanently not going to be there. I would like to raise the question of whether we should think of the indexing services as primarily in the context of the hard copy services in the future? Increasingly I suspect they are going to be related to machine files and it may be that there should be a differential approach.

Obviously there is a severe cost constraint on the size and extent of distribution of hard copy services. At the present time we assume automatically that the machine file should be the same in terms of its content as the hard copy product - but for a long time we have accepted that, in terms of depth of indexing, the machine file would contain much deeper indexing than a hard copy associated product. Why in fact should we not move to a situation where, perhaps for sheer cost and distribution reasons, *APAIS* is only going to be distributed in hard copy form covering the "best" 10,000 serial articles published during the year with more comprehensive indexing appearing in the machine file?

Pinpointer is discussed, and its use is not in doubt in public libraries. One of the problems of the index is that a greater coverage of the popular material is required and later on in the paper the need for popular indexing services in the technology area is mentioned. He referred to the demise of the *Index to Australian book reviews* and I think it is a matter of concern in a country like ours that basic indexing services of this type have not proved attractive to the commercial entrepreneur. We have no parallel to the commercial indexing services that exist overseas. It is assumed that an institution like the National Library has a functional responsibility to provide services like *APAIS*. An institution like the State Library of South Australia has done it in the past in related areas and produced *Pinpointer* and *Index to Australian book reviews* as an institutional initiative which it is finding increasingly difficult to maintain in the current economic climate. They are obviously not going to be taken over and produced by a commercial enterprise. Indeed, I can discern no evidence that people like D.W. Thorpe or anyone else wants to get into this business because they see in it a means of making profit. Therefore I think we do need to consider some positive steps to develop mechanisms which will produce these sorts of products. It has been mentioned that AACOBS is considering going to the Australia Council for support - even if that were successful one could not expect to find, for that particular service, more than a fixed term financial backing. I suspect that knowing the basis on which the Council supports the *Australian* *book review* one would not get a commitment indefinitely into the future. Maybe it would be more appropriate to seek "grant in aid" type support from the federal government through agencies like the National Library where in fact one may be able to develop mechanisms that would give it a permanent contractual support.

Mr Abbott has pointed to the comment by Joan Rydon on the importance of the newspaper index. Actually, Joan Rydon also makes the following comment on the *Index to Australian book reviews:* "the increased number of periodicals containing book reviews and notes on recent publications have been of great assistance to scholars and their use has been facilitated by the *Index to Australian book reviews*". In another paper by Braybrooke there is a reference to the *Current Australian and New Zealand legal literature index* although the 1976 volume only appeared in 1978. I do not know whether that is now totally defunct and whether Mr Abbott has any knowledge of it.

Of special interest to us, and worthy of further discussion, is his reference, on p.75 to the significance of unpublished material for specialized indexes. He deals with this at some length in the context of the *Australian education index* and the difficulties in identifying unpublished material and items which do not enter the mainstream of publishing. Also in the context of *AEI* he refers to a matter which John Thawley discusses in his paper in the *Twelve essays:* the benefits of adopting common thesauri, or common indexing systems for data bases and the considerable benefits which would derive from the compatability of Australian subject descriptors with those used in overseas systems. This often allows for a common search profile to be used on several data bases. John Thawley also referred to the ability of using records for one system in a second system without re-editing them. Mr Abbott also refers to this facility in a number of places within his paper and it is something towards which more thought needs to be given.

As well as the newspaper index, to which Mr Abbott pays considerable attention, mention is made of the need for an index to popular technology journals. Again one would have thought that if there were one area of indexing activity which would be attractive to the commercial entrepreneur, that would be the one. If it is not going to emerge from the commercial world does it is fact mean there is not an effective demand and if there is what are we going to do to solve the problem? He refers, to the estimate that there are 400 technology serials that are not indexed, despite the fact that *Australian science index* has significantly increased its balance towards technology. The paper does not produce any solution but does identify this particular need.

One area that is not mentioned at all and perhaps it is a matter which is not directly relevant to the title of the paper, although indexing services are becoming increasingly intermeshed with computerized data bases, is the ability of computer files to produce custom built lists. It seems to me an important aspect of this particular topic that computerized data banks may provide a better means for developing selective bibliographies and lists of subject areas.

I would like to hear some full discussion of the following special topics: how effectively can AACOBS or any other body promote or attempt to ensure the continuity of existing institutional initiatives like *Pinpointer* which are coming increasingly under threat in the difficult climates which institutions face today? What are the areas of major deficiency apart from those which are listed in the paper, such as the newspaper index and popular technology? To what extent is unpublished material being captured and identified and should we give any further consideration to the general areas or to specific areas? Do we want indexing services which index the overseas periodical literature on material of Australian content rather than the material which is solely published in this country?

General discussion

One of the major points raised in the subsequent discussion was the question of why Australian private enterprise had not become involved in filling the gaps in Australian indexing and had not produced similar services to those made available by overseas commercial organizations.

Referring to W.D. Richardson's remarks about the need to encourage the involvement of commercial enterprise, H. Groenewegen supported the idea of providing initial resource funding. He argued that such support should be given to commercial organizations, and not to libraries and other non-profit institutions, to encourage the establishment of indexing services. The point was made that commercial operators possess the marketing skills to sell the product for which commercial rates would be charged once the service was fully operational. D. Abbott commented that this idea appeared particularly relevant to the newspaper indexing proposal which was outlined in R. Stafford's recent report [*Australian newspaper index feasibility study*. Canberra, National Library of Australia, 1980] He drew attention to the vast amount of in-house newspaper indexing which was undertaken by various bodies and which was only made available to a small group of users.

S. Routh spoke briefly on the relationship between the general indexing services and the more specialized indexes. In referring to the work being undertaken at the Fryer Library, University of Queensland, on Australian literary scholarship, he pointed out the need to supplement Australian sources with overseas reference works when compiling specialist indexes. Enlisting the support of scholars who are working in the field with which the index deals was also stressed as one means of improving the coverage of the work. In concluding his remarks, S. Routh expressed scepticism about the ability of any general library to promote specialist bibliographical centres because of commitments to the home institution. Libraries did have a role to play, however, in promoting quality in general bibliography and in indexing.

J. Simkin, referring to Reference 1 in the paper, advised participants of the recent survey which was undertaken on behalf of the Australian Society of Indexers and which discovered an enormous range of indexes being produced in Australia; many of these covered a highly specialized field. It was noted that the Society was interested in developing this register of indexing work and in co-ordinating the work which was in progress. Participants noted that the results of the survey which was undertaken by Clyde Garrow had been published in the April 1980 issue of *The indexer*.

H. Groenewegen drew attention to two significant indexing efforts which were not mentioned in the paper: *Australian renewable energy resources index* (ARERI) which is compiled by CSIRO and the companion work to AGRIS produced by the International Atomic Energy Agency in Vienna. It was noted that Australian input to the latter was considerable and amounted to approximately 1,000 items per annum over the past ten years. H. Groenewegen advised the audience that access to these entries could be achieved through *INIS Atomindex* or through the machine readable files available from Lucas Heights.

Much of the discussion centred on the need to ensure that certain types of material were covered in existing indexes. M. Cameron referred to the need to cover society newsletters, especially in the field of natural history while M. Middleton commented on the poor coverage, in many areas, of technical and report type material, unpublished conference papers, theses and of data which were only available in machine-readable form. M. Middleton also advised participants of a working committee which was assessing the amount of documentation produced in Australia in the health science related field. It was noted that the committee hoped to make recommendations on supplementing the amount of material which was presently being entered into the MEDLINE system.

In the area of patents M. Middleton drew attention to their availability in machine-readable form through the Infadoc Service in the United States. This provided an example of a form based service where access to Australian material is available through an overseas service.

SESSION 3

AUSTRALIAN INDEXING SERVICES

Paper by D. Abbott - Reference and Information Services Librarian,
State Library of Tasmania

Prepared response by W.D. Richardson, University Librarian,
Baillieu Library, University of
Melbourne

Chairman of Session - N. Stockdale, University Librarian,
Flinders University

Principal participants in General discussion

M. Cameron - Chief Librarian, Deakin University

H. Groenewegen - Executive Director, CAVAL Ltd.

M. Middleton - Lecturer, School of Librarianship,
University of New South Wales

S. Routh - Senior Principal Librarian, Reference Services,
University of Queensland

J. Simkin - City Librarian, Moorabbin, Victoria

SESSION 4a

THE CURRENT STATE OF BIBLIOGRAPHIC CONTROL OF AUSTRALIAN MAPS AND OTHER CARTOGRAPHIC MATERIALS

J. Wells

Map collections and the practicalities of map-keeping have been the subject of a considerable amount of documentation in recent years, both in Australia and even more overseas, but not so much appears to have been written on the bibliographic control of maps. Clear guidelines are necessary to enable map collections to be set up or expanded in state, college, university, school and public libraries, where in the past they have tended to be treated as "Cinderallas".

The range of available carto-bibliographic tools is very limited and considerably less broad than is the case in other fields of bibliography; consequently there is not as much of which to be critical. D.H. Borchardt in his *Australian bibliography* [1] describes some of the attempts which have been made over the years to improve the bibliographical control of Australian maps and apart from updating this information this paper will try to summarise the main tools which a librarian establishing or maintaining a map collection might have access to or need. In spite of the limited range of strictly carto-bibliographic material, the possible sources of reference in related subject areas show the diversity in the map field, and are greater than is generally thought by those not expert in the use of maps. This also means that librarians have to look at sources and resources in many fields other than strictly maps or map librarianship; among the obviously related subjects are geography, geology, climatology, demography, historical surveys and genealogy.

Publications dealing with maps tend in themselves to be fairly elusive; they are often issued in small numbers, not widely publicised or distributed and not updated frequently. In Australia, as elsewhere, the situation is improving, but map acquisition is still partly a "grapevine" activity, with map librarians, cartographers and publishers passing information to each other informally.

Actually, the situation in Australia is better in some ways than overseas, and worse in others. On the one hand, we have a current national bibliography of maps, which is more than many countries have; even the British Library can only update its *Catalogue of printed maps, charts and plans*[2] with ten yearly supplements, and the Library of Congress *Catalogue of copyright entries*, 3rd series, part 6, *Maps and atlases*[3] lists only non-government maps. On the other hand, reference to Australian maps in overseas publications tends to be scanty - witness entries in the two major current bibliographies, the American Geographical Society's *Current geographical publications*[4] and the Royal Geographical Society's *New geographical literature and maps.*[5] The best coverage is found in *Bibliographie cartographique internationale,*[6] which has a large section on "Oceanie" and which is a useful guide for establishing an Australian map collection in a library outside Australia.

But we are concerned with libraries in Australia and the setting up of better and more accessible map holdings, and with the guides available for doing so. Patricia Alonso compiled a valuable starting-point in her *Map collections in public libraries: starting, building, maintaining them*[7] which is aimed at the public library beginning its collection from scratch but which could also be used for any small map collection in other types of libraries. Dorothy Prescott did the same for a general reference library with *Some suggestions for a basic Australian reference collection in the map room*.[8] But if we were to approach the subject on a grander scale what bibliographic tools are needed and what should one be looking for?

(a) Current map bibliographies and accession lists

The most frequently-used bibliographic aids which serve the acquisition librarian in particular, are probably accession lists of other libraries. In the case of the National Library its published list *Australian maps*,[9] supplemented since 1975 by *Overseas map acquisitions*,[10] virtually amounts to a national map bibliography. As an identifier of maps published and available in Australia, as a cataloguing aid, and as a guide to map publishers it is of fundamental importance. It appears quarterly, with annual cumulations since 1974, and one cumulation covering 1961-1963; it should be remembered that before 1968, maps and atlases were listed in *Australian national bibliography*. *Overseas map acquisitions* is issued concurrently with *Australian maps* but is not cumulated. Both tend to be quickly out-of-date, partly because reporting on the acquisition of maps is difficult given the volume of material. *Australian maps* is not totally comprehensive. It aims to "supplement the record of official publications provided by *Australian government publications*" (Preface, *Australian maps*); this record is an outline only, as far as maps are concerned and should be supplemented by lists published by federal and state government mapping agencies, e.g. lands departments, forestry commissions, main roads boards and so on; more will be said of these later.

Other institutions apart from the National Library issue map accession lists. *Maps received in the Mitchell Library*[11] is the most useful of these and contains the same amount of detail as *Australian maps*, set out in the same style as *Bibliographie cartographique internationale*. Recently the format of entry has been made to conform with ISBD (CM) - *International Standard Bibliographic Description (Cartographic Materials)*.[12]

The Mitchell Library has also produced a brief description of its collection in *The Maps Collection in the State Library of New South Wales*[13] and in a list, *Map series held in the Mitchell Library and the General Reference Department*.[14] It is envisaged that the latter publication will be revised every two years.

The Geography Department at Sydney University has produced at least two editions of its *Catalogue of maps in the Map Library of the Department of Geography, University of Sydney*.[15] The University of Tasmania's Geography Department has produced a list of Tasmanian map accessions, the first in 1969-70, with nineteen succeeding issues.[16] Adelaide University's Geography Department Map Library issues a biennial list of *Maps received*,[17] and the University of Western Australia's Departments of Geography and Geology, which share a map and air photo library, produce a quarterly accessions list.[18]

Other state libraries have not covered the field as well as the universities. The State Library of Victoria, with holdings of about 75,000 maps and an annual intake of about 1,500 sheets, does not prepare a comprehensive list of map accessions. Maps acquired under legal deposit or from government departments are listed in the monthly *Legal deposit Victoria*[19] and *Victorian government publications*.[20]

Duplicates lists are produced at fairly regular intervals by most of the map libraries in Australia for exchange purposes, but they cannot strictly be called bibliographic aids. However, they often stand *in lieu* of accession lists and are very useful as acquisition tools.

(b) Directories

Probably the most frequently asked question among map curators or librarians and users of their collections alike, is "Where can I get these maps?" Directories of map collections and sources are therefore invaluable tools to both groups. Rauchle and Alonso's *Directory of map collections in Australia*[21] includes both collections, listed state by state, and map publishers, grouped as Commonwealth government mapping authorities, state government mapping authorities, and commercial map publishers.

Three other publications compiled by Patricia Alonso and designed for particular types of map users are useful in bringing together diverse information on maps: *Map information for the National Inventory of Historic Buildings;*[22] *Victorian planners catalogue of maps and map sources;*[23] and *Guide to planning information sources.*[24] These guide any map user or librarian, not just those concerned with planning or urban conservation, to collections and sources of maps which they may not discover through other listings. Dorothy Prescott's *Guide to maps of the Australian continental shelf*[25] is another important carto-bibliography, not only in its own field, but as a guide to a wide range of maps, atlases and map catalogues.

Two directories produced in Western Australia will assist in the location of maps and map agencies in that state. One is *Cartography in Western Australia; a select bibliography and guide to major map collections in Perth,*[26] produced for Nationwide Map Week in 1979 and the other is *Maps of Western Australia and their uses,*[27] produced by the Western Australian Department of Lands and Surveys. Both are, naturally, very selective, but should provide an incentive to other states to produce more comprehensive lists and catalogues than exist at present.

(c) Producers' and publishers' catalogues and lists

We would like to think that all producers and publishers of maps, government, semi-government or commercial, put out some sort of listing of their products, but in effect this is the case only with the largest of them. In the lists that do exist, format, frequency, clarity and coverage vary considerably from one organisation to another, even within states. The greatest degree of consistency we can hope for is from the Commonwealth agencies producing maps for the whole of Australia, the main ones being the Division of National Mapping, known as Natmap, the Army and the Navy.

Natmap produces a series of *Leaflets*[28] showing, in visual form, Natmap's coverage of Australia in maps at various scales, aerial photographs, orthophotomaps, and so on. These leaflets began in 1978 and succeed earlier indexes called *Maps of Australia and Australian territories,*[29] *Maps of external territories,*[30] *Air photos and related products.*[31] Natmap's *Thematic mapping bulletin*[32] lists maps produced each year by Commonwealth and state authorities and dealing with particular themes, i.e. it excludes general topographic maps and map series. It acts in some sense as a successor to the Department of National Development's *Index to Australian resources maps of 1940-59*[33] and its *Supplement* of 1960-64, which is apparently not going to be continued.

The Army in 1962 produced its Directorate of Military Survey's *Catalogue of official military maps*[34] which was kept up-to-date by irregular supplements but which generally referred to restricted publications. The same applies to the Royal Australian Survey Corps' *Progress report on surveying and mapping,*[35] which has only a limited distribution.

The Royal Australian Navy, on the other hand, sells its nautical charts through accredited agents, and produces an annual *Index of Australian charts,*[36] a visual index map in two sheets. It supplements the Hydrographer of the Royal Navy's *Catalogue of admiralty charts and other hydrographic publications,*[37] which gives world-wide coverage of nautical charts and includes Australian and New Zealand charts.

Within each state, major map-producing authorities such as departments of lands, forests, mines, national parks, main roads and other transport authorities, publish lists of their products. These may be in the form of visual indexes, as with the Central Mapping Authority of New South Wales, or lists of maps, as with the Department of Minerals and Energy in Victoria, or a combination of both. Sometimes more obscure bodies, perhaps not thought of as map producers, will make up indexes which assist their sales personnel, and incidentally assist map librarians at the same time. With such a range of map-producing agencies, it is obviously necessary to have some co-ordinating committee to oversee their activities and make sure that as little duplication as possible occurs. For the whole of Australia, this function is served by the National Mapping Council, and within each state, by bodies such as the Mapping Advisory Committee for Victoria. Meetings of these bodies generally produce a number of lists of recent maps published or to be published by the participating organisations, but the information is frequently confidential until the maps are actually on the sales counter. This is part of the "grapevine" which map librarians and their colleagues in the map-producing world must extend to one another.

Commercial mapping agencies seem surprisingly unwilling to publicise their wares for potential buyers such as libraries although several local publishers do produce lists or catalogues. They include Universal Business Directories, Hamlyn, and Gregory's but generally they are infrequent, scanty lists, hardly a bibliographer's delight. In many cases the only catalogues available are of overseas, not local maps. Very often a "shop-front" approach is needed - for the librarian to actually go to or phone the agency producing or importing maps, to find out what is available. A case in point is the *International map of the world,* produced in developed countries by their own national mapping agencies, but in less developed countries by what was the U.S. Army Topographic Command. A major bibliographic search is required to establish the current name and status of this body, only to discover that it is much easier, if one wants to acquire sheets of this important series, to go through a commercial agency in East Germany.

However, if dealers in current maps are not over-anxious to publicise their goods, antiquarian dealers certainly are. It is not difficult to be put on the mailing list of many antiquarian book, print and map dealers, and thus be kept up-to-date with old and rare maps being bought and sold throughout the world. The only problem is to have enough money in one's budget to be able to afford any of the items offered for sale! The tools discussed in this section are map librarians' aids, and should be kept in carefully organised files, and the major ones should be accessible through the library's catalogue.

(d) Periodicals as bibliographic sources

Reviews of maps, atlases and map-related documents are found in the literature of obviously related fields such as geography, geology and cartography. Local periodicals such as *Australian geographical studies,*[38] *Australian geographer,*[39] *Geography teacher*[40] and *Cartography*[41] carry useful reviews and hence should be accessible to map librarians.

The same applies, of course, to overseas geographical periodicals such as *Geography,*[42] *The geographical journal,*[43] *The geographical magazine*[44] and *Geographical review,*[45] some of which have separate, comprehensive sections on cartography, maps and atlases.

Several overseas associations of cartographers and map librarians produce journals which constitute regular and up-to-date sources of information about map publications, and are thus vital tools for the map librarian. These include the *Bulletin* of the Society of University Cartographers,[46] of the Association of Canadian Map Libraries[47] of the Special Libraries Association Geography and Map Division,[48] and the *Information bulletin* of the Western Association of Map Libraries.[49] References to Australian maps and mapping activities are limited, and the value of these periodicals is more for overseas than for local information. The only Australian journal strictly devoted to map librarianship is *The globe,*[50] published by the Australian Map Curators' Circle; it covers mapping news, reviews and annual conference proceedings.

For major current and retrospective bibliographies one must turn to overseas publications. The Royal Geographical Society's *New geographical literature and maps,* the American Geographical Society's *Current geographical publications* and *Bibliographie cartographique* have already been mentioned as current bibliographies with sections on maps, while *Bibliographie géographique internationale*[51] and *Geo abstracts*[52] mention maps in passing (one section, Series G. of *Geo abstracts* is called *Remote sensing and cartography*). As mentioned previously, their coverage of Australia is not sufficiently in-depth for Australian libraries wishing to establish or to expand map collections, but they are vital in the selection of overseas material.

(e) Guides to atlases

Obviously, by their very nature, many of the works quoted in the previous sections will include both maps and atlases. However, atlases are a specialised field and therefore attract whole sections in lists of reference books such as Walford and Winchell, or separate publications devoted entirely to critical analysis of atlases. These include Alexander's *Guide to atlases: world, regional, national, thematic; an international listing of atlases published since 1950,*[53] published in

1971, with a supplement in 1977. Not as comprehensive, but updated more frequently, is Walsh's *General world atlases in print: a comparative analysis.*[54] A series of articles by Yonge,[55] Stephenson[56] and Murphy[57] in *Geographical review* between 1957 and 1974 surveyed major national and world atlases, but it is a subject which needs to be constantly under review, because new atlases or new editions are being published all the time. The number produced in Australia alone, of widely varying quality and cost, is enough to warrant a critical survey, but apparently no such list or evaluation has been made.

(f) Published catalogues/retrospective bibliographies

Published catalogues of major map collections such as those in the British Library, the Library of Congress, the New York Public Library, the American Geographical Society, the National Maritime Museum (Greenwich) and the Public Record Office (London) form valuable retrospective bibliographies, for which it may take years for supplements to appear. As mentioned earlier, the British Library's *Catalogue of printed maps, charts and plans* is supplemented on a ten-yearly basis while *A list of geographical atlases*[58] prepared by the Library of Congress appeared in several sections over sixty five years. The New York Public Library's *Dictionary catalog of the Map Division,*[59] and the *Index to maps in books and periodicals*[60] produced by the Map Department of the American Geographical Society are both ten-volume works, the latter with two supplements. The National Maritime Museum Library's catalogue, *Atlases and cartography*[61] gives details of maps and charts within atlases, but has not been updated since 1971. The Public Record Office is issuing a catalogue of its holdings continent by continent, but so far only volumes 1 and 2 have appeared, covering the British Isles c.1410-1860 and America and the West Indies.[62]

A useful volume which amounts to a retrospective bibliography of part of the National Library's Collection is R.V. Tooley's handsomely produced *The mapping of Australia,*[63] first published serially as issues of the *Map collectors' series.*[64] Tooley's own collection of Australian maps, as described in his book, was bought by the National Library, and "Tooley" has come to be regarded by the compilers of other map catalogues as the Ferguson of Australian historical maps. Unfortunately, there are not enough lists of the holdings of historical maps in Australian collections. Many are housed in libraries, repositories, government offices and geography departments, and would constitute an immensely valuable and useful resource if only their existence were known and their contents recorded.

In the case of maps and other cartographic materials, the problem is worsened by the unfortunate plurality of media where bibliographic data are published. A glance at Alonso's article *Australian cartographic bibliography (ACB)*[65] will show the diversity of areas to which the seeker after maps must go to find what he wants. Thus, Mayer's *Electoral maps: holdings of the national and state libraries of Australia*[66] appears as an Australasian Political Studies Association *Monograph,* while Alonso's own *Victorian planners catalogue of maps and map sources* is a research paper of the Faculty of Architecture, Building and Town & Regional Planning of the University of Melbourne. *Australian cartographic bibliography* is "the results of the first stage of a project initiated by Patricia Alonso as a joint venture on behalf of the Australian Map Curators Circle and the Australian Institute of Cartographers", but because it is published in a cartographic journal, the work might easily be overlooked by librarians in other fields. The bibliography is only four pages long, but gives a summary of major map sources, with an emphasis on Australian material. An expanded and more accessible published list of resources would be an essential tool for all map librarians, geographers, cartographers and researchers in these fields.

At the moment, the reader, and particularly the Australian reader, is receiving little help from the existing tools in his endeavours to find the maps on many of the broader research projects which involve cartographic work, e.g. environmental studies, family history, urban and rural planning, etc. The descriptions of maps in the local catalogues and lists are mostly far too brief, out-of-date with respect to cataloguing format and subject to a variety of filing arrangements. Improvements in the Australian situation are long overdue with regard to both the content and the coverage of map bibliographies. The accession lists and exchange lists of the various map collections (with the exception of *Australian maps,* which is the most satisfactory) are therefore valiant attempts to supplement the more orthodox sources of information on map holdings. But here too the often inadequate descriptions, the irregular appearance of the lists and the small circulation prevent them from being as useful as one would like. Even *Australian maps* could be cumulated more regularly and kept more up-to-date, and its counterpart *Overseas map acquisitions* should also be cumulated annually.

There is, then, quite generally a great need for more holdings lists of maps (including manuscript maps) held in libraries and archives. Next there is a need for a national union list of map holdings; a small start has been made with this in the National Library and a start has also been made with a national union list of topographic series maps held in Australian libraries. Neither of these projects receives sufficient financial support, and both remain unpublished. One of the problems has been, in part, that map collections have developed over a considerable time with their own classification and cataloguing schemes, or varying adaptations of recognised schemes such as Boggs and Lewis. This has often been necessary because of the specialised subject or area coverage of many small map collections, for which a world-wide coverage was not relevant. This makes it difficult to fit their bibliographic descriptions or cataloguing systems into a general format. As is the case with the proposed union lists of early books the first hurdle to overcome is the adequate description of the holdings of individual libraries.

The publication by the Library of Congress of a MARC format for maps,[67] a section of AACR II (Chapter 3) devoted to cartographic materials, and the recommendations of ISBD (CM) as guidelines for standardised bibliographic description, suitable for use in computerised systems, have opened the way to much greater uniformity. Map librarians in Australia must do as their counterparts appear to be doing in other parts of the world, particularly in the United States and Canada, in co-operating more with each other over acquisition, bibliographic description and control of maps. Over the next decade, the format of cataloguing and access to materials, probably the format of maps and other geographical information will alter dramatically. Map librarians must be adaptable enough to meet the challenge and to provide reader services which take advantage of these changes.

Bibliography

1. Borchardt, D.H. *Australian bibliography: a guide to printed sources of information.* 3rd edn Rushcutters Bay, NSW., Pergamon Press, 1979, pp. 61-63.

2. British Museum. *Catalogue of printed maps, charts and plans.* Photolithographic edition to 1964. London, British Museum, 1967. Corrections and additions. 1968. Ten-year supplement 1965-1974. 1978.

3. U.S. Copyright Office (Library of Congress). *Catalog of copyright entries,* 3rd series, part 6. *Maps and atlases* vol. 1, 1947- Washington, Government Printing Office.

4. *Current geographical publications* vol. 1, 1938- New York, American Geographical Society.

5. *New geographical literature and maps* vol. 1, 1951- London, Royal Geographical Society.

6. *Bibliographie cartographique internationale* vol. 1, 1946- Paris, Colin.

7. Alonso, P.A.G. *Map collections in public libraries: starting, building, maintaining them.* Melbourne, Library Council of Victoria, Public Libraries Division, 1973. (Technical bulletin, no. 3).

8. Prescott, D.F. 'Some suggestions for a basic Australian reference collection in the map room'. In *Proceedings of the Australian Map Curators' Circle Seminar and Workshop* held at the Department of Geography, University of Sydney, 27-28 February 1974. Canberra, National Library of Australia, 1975.

9. *Australian maps* no. 1, 1968- Canberra, National Library of Australia.

10. *Overseas map acquisitions* no. 1, 1975- Canberra, National Library of Australia.

11. Mitchell Library, Sydney. *Maps received in the Mitchell Library* no. 1, 1959- Sydney, Library of New South Wales.

12. *ISBD(CM): International Standard Bibliographic Description for Cartographic Materials.* London, IFLA International Office for UBC, 1977.

13. Library of New South Wales. *The Maps Collection in the State Library of New South Wales.* 4th edn? Sydney, The Library, 1979.

14. Library of New South Wales. *Map series held in the Mitchell Library and the General Reference Department* [of the Library of New South Wales] Sydney, The Library, 1970.

15. University of Sydney. Department of Geography. *A catalogue of maps held in the Map Library of the Department of Geography, University of Sydney.* Compiled by M. Lee under the direction of A. Bartlett. Sydney, Dept. of Geography, University of Sydney, 1973.

—— 2nd edn Compiled by E. Griffin under the direction of J.R. Roberts. Sydney, Dept. of Geography, University of Sydney, 1977.

16. University of Tasmania. Department of Geography. *Tasmanian maps; accessions* no. 1, 1970- Hobart, The Department.

17. University of Adelaide. Geography Department. Map Library. *Maps received* no. 1, 1972/73?- Adelaide, The Department.

18. University of Western Australia. Departments of Geography and Geology. Map and Air Photo Library. *Accessions lists* no. 1, 1976?- Perth, The Departments.

19. *Legal deposit Victoria* no. 1, 1977- Melbourne, State Library of Victoria.

20. *Victorian government publications* no. 1, 1976- Melbourne, State Library of Victoria.

21. Rauchle, N.M. *Directory of map collections in Australia.* Compiled and edited by N.M. Rauchle and P.A.G. Alonso. 2nd edn Canberra, National Library of Australia, 1977.

22. Alonso, P.A.G. *Map information for the National Inventory of Historic Buildings.* Melbourne, University of Melbourne, Centre for Environmental Studies with the Faculty of Architecture, Building and Town & Regional Planning, 1976. (Urban conservation working papers, no. 11).

23. —— *Victorian planners catalogue of maps and map sources.* Melbourne, University of Melbourne, Faculty of Architecture, Building and Town & Regional Planning, 1973. (Research paper, no. 38).

24. —— *Guide to planning information sources for R.M.I.T.* Melbourne, Royal Melbourne Institute of Technology Limited (Central Library), 1976.

25. Prescott, D.F. 'Guide to maps of the Australian continental shelf'. In *Australia's continental shelf,* edited by J.R.V. Prescott. West Melbourne, Vic., Nelson (Australia) in association with Australian Institute of International Affairs, 1979, Appendix II.

26. Western Australia. State Reference Library. Division of Government Publications and Maps. *Cartography in Western Australia: a select bibliography and guide to major map collections in Perth.* Perth, Library Board of Western Australia, 1979.

27. Western Australia. Department of Lands and Surveys. *Maps of Western Australia and their uses.* Perth, Central Map Agency, 1979.

28. Australia. Division of National Mapping. *Leaflet series.* No. 2, 1978- Canberra, The Division.

29. ——— *Maps of Australia and Australian territories.* Edition 1, Jan. 1975- Edition 8, July 1978? Canberra, The Division.

30. ——— *Australia; maps of external territories* Edition 1, June 1970- Edition 5, 1974? Canberra, The Division.

31. ——— *Air photographs and related products.* Edition 1, Jan. 1975- Edition 7, July 1978? Canberra, The Division.

32. ——— *Thematic mapping bulletin* vol. 1, 1971- Canberra, The Division.

33. ——— Resources Information and Development Branch. *Index to Australian resources maps of 1940-59.* Canberra, Dept. of National Development, 1962.

    ——— *Supplement for 1960-64.* Canberra, 1966.

34. ——— Army. Directorate of Military Survey. *Catalogue of official military maps.* 2nd edn Canberra, The Directorate, 1962.

35. ——— Royal Australian Survey Corps. *Progress report on surveying and mapping* no. 1, 1976- Canberra, Department of Defence.

36. ——— Royal Australian Navy. Hydrographic Service. *Index of Australian charts. Australia-Northern Portion* and *Australia-Southern Portion.* Sydney, The Service, 1971?-

37. Great Britain. Hydrographer of the Navy. *Catalogue of admiralty charts and other hydrographic publications.* Taunton, The Hydrographer, 1925?-

38. *Australian geographical studies* vol. 1, 1963- Adelaide and Sydney, Institute of Australian Geographers.

39. *Australian geographer* vol. 1, 1928- Sydney, Geographical Society of New South Wales.

40. *Geography teacher* vol. 1, 1961- Melbourne, Geography Teachers' Association of Victoria.

41. *Cartography* vol. 1, 1954- Canberra, Australian Institute of Cartographers.

42. *Geography* vol. 1, 1901- London and Sheffield, Geographical Association.

43. *The geographical journal* vol. 1, 1893- London, Royal Geographical Society.

44. *The geographical magazine* vol. 1, 1935- London, Geographical Magazine.

45. *Geographical review* vol. 1, 1916- New York, American Geographical Society.

46. *The bulletin of the Society of University Cartographers* vol. 1, 1966- Portsmouth, The Society.

47. Association of Canadian Map Libraries. *Bulletin* [formerly *Conference proceedings*, then *Newsletter*] vol. 16, 1974- Ottawa, The Association.

48. Special Libraries Association. Geography and Map Division. *Bulletin* vol. 1, 1950- New York, The Division.

49. Western Association of Map Libraries. *Information Bulletin* vol. 1, 1969- Santa Cruz, The Association.

50. *The globe; journal of the Australian Map Curators' Circle* vol. 1, 1974- Canberra, The Circle.

51. *Bibliographie geographique internationale* vol. 1, 1891- Paris, Colin.

52. *Geo abstracts* 1966- Norwich, University of East Anglia.
    Series A. Landforms and the quaternary 1966-
    Series B. Climatology and hydrology 1966-
    Series C. Economic geography 1966-
    Series D. Social and historical geography 1966-
    Series E. Sedimentology 1973-
    Series F. Regional and community planning 1973-
    Series G. Remote sensing, photo-grammetry and cartography 1974-
    Annual index 1971-

53. Alexander, G. *Guide to atlases: world, regional, national, thematic; an international listing of atlases published since 1950.* Metuchen, New Jersey, Scarecrow, 1971.

——— *Guide to atlases supplement: world, regional, national, thematic; an international listing of atlases published 1971 through 1975 with comprehensive indexes.* Metuchen, New Jersey, Scarecrow, 1977.

54. Walsh, S.P. *General world atlases in print: a comparative analysis.* 2nd edn New York, Bowker, 1974.

55. Yonge, E.L. 'National atlases: a summary'. *Geographical review* 47: 570-578, 1957; 'Regional atlases: a summary survey'. *Geographical review* 52: 407-432, 1962; 'World and thematic atlases: a summary survey'. *Geographical review* 52: 583-596, 1962.

56. Stephenson, R.W. 'Atlases of the Western Hemisphere: a summary survey'. *Geographical review* 62: 92-119, 1972.

57. Murphy, M. 'Atlases of the Eastern Hemisphere: a summary survey'. *Geographical review* 64: 111-139, 1974.

58. U.S. Library of Congress. Map Division. *A list of geographical atlases in the Library of Congress, with bibliographical notes.* Vol. 1-4 by P.L. Phillips. Vol. 5-8 by C.E. Le Gear. Washington, Government Printing Office, 1909-1974.

59. New York Public Library. Research Libraries. *Dictionary catalog of the Map Division.* Boston, G.K. Hall, 1971.

60. American Geographical Society. Map Department. *Index to maps in books and periodicals.* Boston, G.K. Hall, 1968.

-- 1st supplement, 1971.
-- 2nd supplement, 1976

61. National Maritime Museum, Greenwich. Library. *Atlases and cartography.* London, H.M.S.O. 1971. (*Catalogue of the Library,* vol. 3, parts 1 & 2).

62. Public Record Office, London. *Maps and plans in the Public Record Office.* London, H.M.S.O., 1967- Vol. 1, British Isles, c.1410-1860. Vol. 2, America and West Indies.

63. Tooley, R.V. *The mapping of Australia.* London, Holland Press Cartographica, 1979.

64. *Map collectors' series* vol. 1, 1963- vol. 11, 1975. London, Map Collectors' Circle.

65. Alonso, P.A.G. 'Australian cartographic bibliography (ACB)'. *Cartography* 11: 108-112, 1979.

66. Mayer, H. *Electoral maps; holdings of the National and State Libraries of Australia.* Sydney, Australian Political Studies Association, 1973. (Monograph no. 12)

67. U.S. Library of Congress. Marc Development Office. *Maps, a MARC format: specifications for magnetic tapes containing catalog records for maps.* 2nd edn Washington, Library of Congress, 1976.

Supplement to Bibliography

1. Australia. Bureau of Mineral Resources, Geology and Geophysics. *Publications of the Bureau of Mineral Resources, Geology and Geophysics. Part II - Maps.* 1962?- Canberra, Dept. of National Development.

2. Australia. Department of Defence (Air Office). *Royal Australian Air Force. Aeronautical charts catalogue, including topographic maps.* 19?- Canberra, The Department. [limited distribution]

3. Australia. Department of Defence (Navy Office). *Report of the Hydrographic Service Royal Australian Navy.* Issue no. 1, 1965- Canberra, The Department.

4. Australia. Department of National Resources. *Map and publication stock list.* 1971-1977? Canberra, The Department.

5. *Bibliographic guide to maps and atlases: Nineteen seventy-nine.* The Research Libraries of the New York Public Library and the Library of Congress. Boston G.K. Hall, 1980- (Library Catalogs-Bibliographic Guides)

   [This is a new annual publication covering cartographic materials catalogued by the New York Public Library and the Library of Congress]

6. *Bibliographie cartographique internationale* vol. 1, 1946- vol. 75, 1979. Paris, Colin.

   [Ceased publication 1979]

7. British Museum. *Catalogue of the manuscript maps, charts and plans and of the topographic drawings in the British Museum.* London, 1844. Photolithographic reprint made by Gregg Associates, Brussels, 1962.

8. *Catalogue of the National Map Collection, Public Archives of Canada, Ottawa, Ontario.* Boston, G.K. Hall, 1976.

9. *Geo Katalog. Landkarten, Plane, Atlanten, Reisefuhrer, Globen aus aller Welt.* Stuttgart, Geo Center Internationales Landkartenhaus, 1972- Internationales Ausgabe Band 1 [annual volume] Band 2 [updating volume]

10. *Geo Kartenbrief. Neue Karten, Atlanten und Handbucher aus aller Themenbereichen der regionalen Geographie, zugluch Nachtragedienst zum Geo Katalog. Band 2.* [updates *Geo Katalog*]

11. Harris, C.D. *Bibliography of geography. Part 1. Introduction to general aids.* Chicago, University of Chicago, 1976. (Research Paper no. 179).

12. *The Indian Ocean: a select bibliography of resources for study in the National Library of Australia.* Canberra, National Library of Australia, 1979. Chapter 7, Maps and charts.

13. Küchler, A.W., ed. *International bibliography of vegetation maps.* Laurence, Kansas, University of Kansas Libraries, 1965- Vol. 3, U.S.S.R., Asia and Australia.

14. Lock, C.B.M. *Geography and cartography: a reference handbook.* 3rd rev. edn London, Bingley, 1976.

15. Nichols, H. *Map librarianship.* London, Bingley, 1976.

16. Scientific Committee on Antarctic Research. *Catalogue of Antarctic maps and charts.* 4th edn Canberra, Division of National Mapping, 1974.

17. Winch, K. *International maps and atlases in print.* 2nd edn London, Bowker, 1977.

Introductory remarks by J. Wells

I do not intend to give a precise summary of what the paper is about but I would like to mention a few additional facts to those mentioned in the paper and to give examples of the lack of bibliographical control of some types of map information.

My paper is an attempt to point out both the strengths and weaknesses of bibliographical control for maps in Australia but it is not limited to either Australian maps or to Australian bibliographic tools; this would have meant a very limited scope indeed. It is because of the limitations of map bibliography in Australia that it is necessary to turn so frequently to the overseas guides which I have mentioned under various headings in the paper.

There is much ephemeral material such as map producers' catalogues, price lists, reports and indexes both commercial and government produced, which map librarians have to rely on to keep track of current production. The problem is that they are not usually to be found in recognized bibliographic aids. Major bibliographic tools such as *ANB* and *AGP* do not include catalogues and map finding tools unless they contain more than five pages and fall within the specified reporting period. They are referred to in my paper under producers' and publishers' catalogues and lists. There are several I would particularly like to point out which are not listed separately in the bibliography attached to that paper or in the brief two page supplement.

Government producers' catalogues are among the items most difficult to track down for finding maps. For instance the Victorian Department of Crown Lands and Survey, being the major map producer for Victoria, has annual, quarterly and interim reports on the progress of mapping in that state and also a mapping and aerial photography catalogue. The Central Mapping Authority of New South Wales has a catalogue of New South Wales maps which is a fold out production and which acts as a visual index as well as a verbal index. It, once again, is not the sort of publication which is listed in recognized bibliographies. The Victorian Department of Minerals and Energy produces a publication booklet. More ephemeral still are the lists put out by government departments such as forestry departments, roads boards, geological surveys, planning commissions and other government agencies which may deal in some way, often peripherally, with maps. Some departments, for example, the Melbourne and Metropolitan Board of Works which is a major map producer, issue computer print outs showing plans recently produced. Where a whole department deals with maps as is the case with the Queensland Department of Mapping and Surveying its annual report may contain a sizeable catalogue of maps. The existence of such listings is often not very well known. The map librarian or cartobibliographer needs to be aware of the existence of these hard to trace documents and be able to use them to assist readers who are often much less familiar with sources of information. This problem is frequently aggravated by required maps being part of another work and not easily recognized from the bibliographic description which one may be able to find if they find their way into a bibliography at all. Even the most useful tools which we possess, *Australian maps* and *Overseas map acquisitions*, do not contain references to maps within other publications.

The Division of National Mapping is the major overall body at the federal level and produces the annual *Thematic mapping bulletin* which is the most helpful document for tracing elusive maps particular those appearing as parts of other publications.

Both the *Thematic mapping bulletin* and *Australian maps* should be mentioned in the context of directories which are referred to in my paper. *Thematic mapping bulletin* contains a listing of map indexes, brochures and catalogues as well as a listing of contributing authorities. *Australian maps* has an extensive listing of Australian map publishers which I understand is to be further expanded in the near future.

Two other closely related fields, aerial photography and LANDSAT imagery, should perhaps be mentioned here. Aerial photographs are produced by the major mapping authority, usually the Lands Department, of each state. The Division of National Mapping keeps coverage for the whole country in its headquarters and in its state offices each of which should have a data file on its holdings which the Division of National Mapping is trying to co-ordinate.

LANDSAT imagery - images relayed from the earth resources satellites - is another new field closely related to maps and aerial photographs. This imagery is kept in the Australian Landsat Processing Station at Belconnen. It is intended that the National Mapping Council and the agency of that Council in each state, usually the Lands Department or the Surveyor's General Office, will maintain files of microfilm images from this photography. This will necessitate a whole new scheme of recording and classifying within that federal department and they intend to produce a microfilm catalogue of the images. It is important for suitable librarians to work with agencies and projects such as these.

In conclusion, the rapidly expanding technology in both map production and in other areas of geographical information means that new methods of searching for these reference data will be used by librarians and others. Geocoding systems, data banks, microfiche maps, remote sensing and LANDSAT imagery will be employed more and more to plot and analyse geographical data. In the meantime however, librarians will continue to keep and users will continue to demand traditional visual sources of information and they will continue to need carto-bibliographic guides in the form of catalogues, current and retrospective bibliographies, accession lists, directories, indexes and reviews. Those I have enumerated in the paper are too diverse and scattered to cater for easy access to map and other cartographic materials at the moment. They need to be consolidated, cumulated and more widely publicized amongst map users and the information using community in general. We have a good start in Australia with the two acquisition lists, *Australian maps* and *Overseas map acquisitions*, produced by the National Library and perhaps we should be encouraged by the words of a recent overseas reviewer of these two lists: "we all lament the lack of bibliographical control for maps however we should all look to Australia and review the manner in which they seek to control their national map collection". It does need continued staff and financial support so it can be expanded and used as a basis for further development in the bibliographical control of maps.

Prepared response by D. Prescott

'Floundering among the map', 'Muddle, mayhem and myopia' - these are just two titles of essays by librarians who have plunged into the world of map librarianship and have discovered that it is not a field for the faint hearted.

The state of carto-bibliography in Australia is still rudimentary and throughout the paper there are the comments - "bibliographies are very limited", "the publications are elusive", "they are produced in small numbers", etc. Reference is also made to the reliance on overseas carto-bibliographies for the control of Australian maps. It should be pointed out that we have just lost what is perhaps the most important bibliography of maps - *Bibliographie cartographique internationale.* Publication ceased last year with the issue for 1975 and although tardy in appearance it was a useful tool for anyone who was establishing a collection.

Reference is also made to the reliance on accession lists which provides another indication of the rudimentary development of bibliography within this field. It is pertinent to point out here that the universities are probably the most prolific in the production of accession lists and such listings are on the whole compiled by draughtsmen and cartographers and not by librarians.

This reliance on accession lists points up the need for a comprehensive bibliographic map service for Australian librarians. *Australian maps* struggles valiantly to provide this service and although it possesses a considerable reputation overseas, the National Library is aware that many maps slip unrecorded through the net. It is not a national bibliography but only a listing of maps received in the National Library and we are conscious that there are many maps which ought to be received and are not. There is much scope for improving the coverage of *Australian maps* and the state libraries, in particular have a lot to offer in this field by extending the bibliographic control of maps within their own states.

Probably the most important and potentially the largest source of map information is the map producers themselves. There has been a notable increase in information from this group but many producers need to be persuaded to produce regular lists of their maps. In future we hope to have the advantage of online graphic portrayal of map availability directly from the producers' offices - this is perhaps idealistic but if we do not hold these types of hopes the goal will probably not be achieved.

I suggest we should firstly consider our own shortcomings in carto-bibliography and discuss library originated listings and bibliographies and secondly move on to the map producers themselves. I would, therefore, like the following recommendations to be considered.

Recommendations

1. That a bibliography of official government department map catalogues and indexes be prepared.
2. That a union list of map series be prepared.

3. That a list of current Australian atlases be prepared.
4. That a retrospective list of atlases be prepared.
5. That annual and five yearly cumulations of *Overseas map acquisitions* be made available.
6. That five year and ten year cumulations of *Australian maps* be made available.
7. That a retrospective catalogue of historical maps be prepared.
8. That the National Library consider the preparation of a microfiche of index maps relating to its holdings particularly with respect to foreign series.
9. That State Advisory Mapping Committees be encouraged to produce and publish catalogues or lists of newly released maps.
10. That the National Mapping Council be approached with the suggestion that a standard format for the presentation of bibliographic information be employed by all state mapping authorities both on their maps and in their catalogues.

General discussion

D.H. Borchardt started the discussion by referring to the large number of accession lists which were being compiled within universities by cartographers. He suggested that there was a need to contact the producers of these lists and to encourage them to co-operate with librarians. Lack of resources within libraries also meant that outside funding was required to implement some of the recommendations and Mr Borchardt commented that the Bicentenary History Project Authority might be interested in supporting projects in this area.

The remainder of the discussion concentrated on the ten recommendations which were spoken to briefly by D. Prescott and J. Wells.

Recommendation 1:

Participants noted that this was an expansion of what is already produced by the National Library in the index to *Australian maps* and by the Division of National Mapping in its *Thematic mapping bulletin*. J. Wells commented that input from state libraries was necessary because they are in a better position to identify maps produced by state government departments and authorities.

Recommendation 2:

D. Prescott suggested that this project should be conducted on a national basis with the National Library requesting input from the states, and that a standard format needed to be adopted.

Recommendation 3:

It was noted that information on current Australian atlases was presently contained in a number of sources and that there was a need for a single descriptive listing to assist those who wished to acquire atlases.

118

Recommendation 4:

Participants noted that many libraries held historical material in this area and that such a listing would best be produced on a co-operative basis.

Recommendations 5 and 6:

D. Prescott informed participants that one cumulation existed for *Australian maps* covering the years 1961-1973, but that no cumulation was available for *Overseas map acquisitions* which has been published quarterly since 1975. It was pointed out that the value of both works would be enhanced by providing cumulations.

Recommendation 7:

In introducing this recommendation, D. Prescott advised participants that little work had been carried out in Australia on retrospective map bibliography, although the mapping authorities in Western Australia and South Australia were considering the compilation of retrospective lists.

Commenting on the recommendation, J. Wells stressed the enormity of the task and pointed out that such a listing would involve not only the major collections but many types of libraries. There would be a need to define "historical" and to specify the boundaries of Australia if the listing were restricted to Australia. It was noted that the state libraries would have a vital role to play in the creation of such a list and that the map producers, which held the largest collection of historical maps, would also need to be approached.

Recommendation 8:

Speaking to this suggestion, D. Prescott informed the audience that it involved utilising expertise other than librarianship as a cartographer would be required to draw up the maps suitable for microfiche reduction. Participants noted that a feasibility study and an exploration of cost would have to be the initial steps.

Recommendation 9:

Referring to this recommendation, J. Wells informed participants that the lists produced by government and semi-government authorities were not produced in a uniform format.

Recommendation 10:

D. Prescott advised participants that the National Mapping Council was aware of the need for standardization and compatibility in the area of data bases and that that Council would understand the parallel situation in bibliographic description.

SESSION 4a

NONBOOK MATERIALS - MAPS

Paper by J. Wells - Map Librarian, State Library of Victoria

Prepared response by D. Prescott - Map Curator, National Library of Australia

Chairman of Session - N. Stockdale, University Librarian, Flinders University

Principal participants in General discussion

D.H. Borchardt - Chief Librarian, La Trobe University

THE NEED FOR IMPROVED BIBLIOGRAPHICAL SERVICES IN THE FIELD OF AUSTRALIAN MUSIC

H. Sugden

The lack of systematic bibliographical coverage in Australian music is perhaps symptomatic of a general neglect by scholars and by libraries. With reference to libraries, I refer in particular to Australian state and public libraries. This neglect is somewhat surprising when one thinks in terms of music as an industry - it is one of the largest of our industries. Possibly music is regarded by all too many as purely a leisure activity and therefore as less worthy of attention than other disciplines. It is possible to look forward, however, to the next decade as one of improvement and development. Australian music may become more widely disseminated - the strong lobby for an increase in the content of Australian music in broadcasting, the increasing leisure time available to the population at large and improvements in the technology for the transmission of music, will all bring pressure to bear. It is hoped that these pressures will, in turn, result in improved bibliographical coverage. There has been no shortage of activity and improvement during the past decade and the lacunae in the field of Australian music have already been revealed by D. Borchardt[1] and by K. Horn.[2]

I would, in this paper, like to examine the direction which Australian music bibliography has already taken during the last decade and to use this as a signpost for where we may expect to travel in the coming decade.

This paper concentrates mainly upon the bibliographical coverage of music scores (including sheet music) and sound recordings. These terms are sometimes grouped together under the rather loose term 'non-book materials'. Books on music do not suffer from the same problems in bibliographical control and therefore it seems best to exclude them. Some definition is necessary of the term 'Australian music'. This could be interpreted by some as musical activity in Australia. For my purpose, however, I will restrict it to music:
(a) composed by Australians
(b) performed by Australian musicians
(c) published by Australian publishers.

It is difficult, sometimes to decide what is 'Australian'. Is an Australian born composer such as Malcolm Williamson, who is working and being published overseas, an 'Australian' composer? Is a British composer, like Roger Smalley, working in Australia, an 'Australian' composer? Sometimes the attitude of the composer himself does not assist in clarification of the matter. Writers on Australian music have to grapple with this problem on occasions.

> Malcolm Williamson left Australia and settled in England at twenty two years of age. The question is therefore raised as to whether a coverage of his work belongs in a book about Australian composers. The infrequency of his returns to this country since that time has done little to settle the matter, but what perhaps decides the issue

> beyond doubt is Williamson's readiness, not to say, anxiety, to associate his music with what he calls a 'slender Australian tradition', in which he includes, among others, the music of Alfred Hill, Roy Agnew and Margaret Sutherland. His interest in a compositional ancestry is certainly more relevant to the issue than his oft quoted remark, 'When I think about it, I am certain that my music is characteristically Australian although I have never tried to make it so', which adds very little of an analytical nature to the debate.[3]

It seems, therefore, that if an Australian composer living abroad still shows artistic allegiance to the mother country then we must include him. Likewise, British composers who show no artistic link with Australia must be excluded.

I referred previously to developments during the past decade and I would like to examine some of these in relation to the tools used by music librarians as bibliographical sources for Australian music. These are:

(1) National bibliography
(2) Select bibliographies and catalogues
(3) Publishers or trade catalogues.

National bibliography

Australian national bibliography lists those items which are received under legal deposit arrangements plus other items relevant to Australia. During the past decade there has been a considerable improvement in the coverage of Australian music in *ANB*. A sample of 112 music score titles by Australian composers, which were published between 1970 and 1979, was used to test the effectiveness of *ANB*. The titles appear in the stock of the Central Music Library, Perth. Of those scores which were published in Australia between 1970 and 1974, only 34% appeared in *ANB*. Of those published in Australia between 1975 and 1979, 65% appeared in *ANB*. Of the 27 items in the sample which were published overseas, only 3 (11%) appeared in *ANB*.

I am not aware of any analysis for British composers appearing in the *British catalogue of music* but I have heard of a success rate as high as 75%, mentioned with regard to music published in Britain which appears in the *BCM*.

Of the 56 Australian items in the sample which actually appeared in *ANB* only 13 appeared in the year of publication, 30 in the year after, 12 in the second year after and one in the third year after publication. A sample of 56 items appearing in the *BCM* revealed that 39 of them were listed in the year of publication, 16 the year after and one in the second year after publication.

	Year of publication	1 year	2 years	3 years
ANB	23%	54%	21%	2%
BCM	70%	28%	2%	-

In the light of these figures I think that the effectiveness of national bibliography for coverage of Australian music must be called into question. The reliance primarily upon legal deposit causes omissions due to publishers' negligence and the inclusion of overseas material is very selective, possibly due to lack of awareness.

Generally speaking only material which is published, using the word in the strictest sense, is included in *ANB*. This causes huge omissions in the field of music because some music never becomes commercially available in printed form. It has been argued that hire material and unpublished manuscripts may be just as significant as other materials for the purposes of music bibliography.[4] Hire copies are usually listed in publishers' catalogues and are, after all, commercially available and therefore must be included in music bibliographies. For example, the edition for sale of 'The stars turn', from 'Love 200' by Peter Sculthorpe, is for high voice and piano. The version of this piece for high voice and string quartet is only available 'on hire'. Even though both appear in the Faber music catalogue, only the former has been listed in *ANB*.

With regard to composers' manuscripts, these are significant because they may be used for performance or recording purposes. Often a recording becomes the only way in which a work is ever published. Publishers themselves often issue facsimile reproductions of the composer's manuscript as the final printed form of the score.

All of the factors which I have mentioned so far indicate that the difficulties of music bibliography are fairly complex. Certainly, from the point of view of the musician and librarian alike, the need for access to both published and unpublished music causes frustration with the current level of bibliographical coverage. Much Australian music is never commercially published yet it does become sought after. Raymond Hanson's trombone concerto is a recommended piece for Licentiate level in the A.M.E.B. syllabus. It has been recorded but, to my knowledge, only exists in manuscript form. It is necessary, when tracking down such fugitive material, to rely upon sources other than national bibliography and sometimes upon the tolerance and co-operation of colleagues.

The next decade will almost certainly see the publication in microform of the National Union Catalogue of Music (NUCOMUSIC). This file of cards, maintained at the National Library, is based upon catalogue entries for music scores supplied by contributing institutions (separately or through NUCOM). It is primarily used for locations for inter-library loan but may have a secondary purpose as a bibliographical tool. Its adequacy as far as 'Australian' music is concerned has yet to be tested. It will depend upon:

(a) the number of libraries contributing

(b) the cataloguing policies of those libraries (whether sheet music, manuscripts, band parts, etc. are catalogued)

(c) staffing at the National Library to maintain and edit the files

(d) time lags caused by the contributors.

The coverage of NUCOMUSIC is, of course, dictated by the stock selection of contributing libraries. Adequate stock selection will depend, to a large extent, as far as 'Australian' music is concerned, upon the availability of bibliographical information. In short, if libraries do not know that the music exists, they are not likely to purchase it. This may appear to be an over-simplification of the situation but it is one of the fundamental points to be made about NUCOMUSIC. Over a four year period it has provided locations for only 4 out of 10 general requests for scores made by the Central Music Library, Perth. Let us hope that its performance, based upon the national collection as a whole, will be somewhat better for music of our own nation.

Select bibliographies and catalogues

As there seem to be deficiencies in the national coverage, librarians and scholars must turn to select bibliographies such as that compiled by Andrew McCredie.[5] This is one of the few documents attempting to cover the field and its use must be supplemented by reference to works lists in monographs by such people as James Murdoch[6] or to anthologies such as that recently edited by Frank Callaway and David Tunley.[7]

The emergence of the Australia Music Centre as a vital force in the dissemination of information on Australian music is, without doubt, the most significant development of the last decade. The publication of *Music Australia: a select list of literature, music scores and sound recordings in print*[8] is something of a milestone. Also the *Catalogues of Australian compositions*[9] have gone a considerable way towards complete documentation of the output of contemporary Australian composers. The significance of these catalogues has been described in an article by Juliet Pettitt,[10] along with some of the shortcomings. Suffice it to say here that the catalogues include published and unpublished works along with sound recordings. An update is currently being considered by the Australia Music Centre.

It is perhaps worth mentioning here that Martin Buzacott of Australia Music Centre is currently embarking upon a bibliography of Australian sheet music. Such a document would be of immense value - the difficulties faced by the music librarian of the future when asked for the sheet music of "C'mon Aussie c'mon" or "Up there Cazaly" are easily imagined.

Publishers' or trade catalogues

Apart from reviews in journals or tracking down items in music in print sources, trade catalogues may be the only way of finding out if works have ever existed. Not all publishers, however, issue regular catalogues. For sound recordings it becomes necessary to use trade materials as there is a complete absence of a national discography. The inclusion of the listings, albeit selective, in *Music Australia* must be commended as it is positively the only source for recordings of Australian contemporary music. Currently available popular, middle-of-the-road, jazz and country music are all included in the *AMSCAT* catalogue.[11]

There has been some hope that the embryo Union Catalogue of Sound Recordings (established on a similar basis to NUCOMUSIC) will serve as a sort of national discography in times to come. When viewing the enormous backlog of cataloguing at the NLA one cannot but be sceptical about the project. Lack of currency will be a problem as recordings are often deleted soon after issue and it will therefore, be of limited use as a selection tool. Coverage is also bound to be limited unless broadcasting networks are persuaded to contribute entries (at least for non commercial releases).

What is required is a current general national discography covering music and possibly spoken word as well. Such a discography would need to include gramophone records, cassettes, cartridges, reel to reel tapes and other forms of sound recording. Based upon a uniform standard of cataloguing such a tool would serve as discography, reference work and selection tool for librarians and the music trade in general. Australian music released overseas would need to be included along with overseas recordings released in Australia. This latter coverage would alleviate, somewhat, the difficulties in tracking down Australian record numbers as they often differ from that of the parent company when the recording is issued under licence in Australia. There are also occasions when the label, as well as the number, differs completely from the original.

The establishment of an Australian national discography would be one step towards the ideal of complete bibliographical coverage. Other steps would be the establishment of a specialised Australian National Music Bibliography possibly based somewhere other than the National Library, in order to avoid some of the problems with legal deposit already mentioned. The Australia Music Centre has as one of its objectives "to assist with the collection of bibliographical materials on Australian composers and musicians."[12]

The Centre is in a position to receive both published and unpublished scores from publishers and composers and sound recordings from record companies. A composer who deposits his manuscript for photocopying has the added incentive that the score will be passed to the ABC for assessment. Record companies often use the Centre for promotion of new recordings; there is an incentive for them to deposit copies at the Centre as it is in business to promote Australian music. Much new Australian music is already documented in *Music Australia*; it would be a logical step for the Australia Music Centre to assume responsibility for the production of an Australian National Music Bibliography and possibly also for an Australian National Discography. This may, in the light of the limited finance available to the institution, appear to be nothing more than a pipe dream. One thing that the Centre could do, at little cost, would be to assist the National Library in plugging gaps in the existing national bibliography.

When the World Inventory of Sources of Music Information (WISMI) surveys commence, it is obvious that many gaps in coverage will be revealed - especially in the areas of retrospective subject bibliography. The WISMI scheme is

> an improbable, utopian, internationally co-ordinated scheme, utilising the latest technologies for the collection, processing, storage, retrieval, and dissemination of significant documentation relating to music. It would bring this documentation together via an international network of data banks, operated by computers in conjunction with ultra-microforms, video-screens, and advanced audio systems, all transmitted by satellite. It would encompass recorded

> sound, printed and manuscript music, literature about music, musical iconography, materials for music education etc. It would be concerned with art music, folk music, and popular music - in all genres and media, in all periods and countries.[13]

WISMI will set out to gather citations of publications which will guide the reader in obtaining specific information. It is interesting to note that "when such sources of information do not exist, or are inadequate WISMI will itself set out to gather that information".[14] The information sought by WISMI in the area of publications includes national bibliography, bibliographies of bibliographies, bibliographies of music and music literature, bibliographies of music (including in print publications) and discographies. Any improvements which are made to bibliography of Australian music will thus improve the sum total of worldwide information about music.

In conclusion, I would like to say that I am aware of the difficulties that would have to be surmounted if my proposals for an ANMB and AND were to be translated into action. In my view, however, despite the present economic climate, they are attainable if only because of the comparatively limited annual output of music publishers and recording companies of music that may be truly termed 'Australian'.

This is not the first paper to have been written on the need for improved bibliographical services for Australian music. I am indebted particularly to the paper written in 1975 by Ken Horn upon which many of my ideas have been based. I do hope that we may make such improvements in the field that the topic need not appear on the agenda for future conferences.

References

1. Borchardt, D.H. *Australian bibliography; a guide to printed sources of information.* 3rd edn Rushcutters Bay, N.S.W., Pergamon Press, 1976, p.102.

2. Horn, K.A.R. 'Gaps in Australian music bibliography'. In Borchardt, D.H. ed. *Twelve essays on Australian subject bibliography.* Canberra, National Library of Australia, 1980, (Development of resource sharing networks. Networks study, no.12), pp.27-30. [Originally published under same title in Borchardt, D.H. ed. *Seven essays on Australian subject bibliography.* Canberra, AACOBS, 1977, pp.16-19.]

3. Chatterton, B. 'Malcolm Williamson'. In Callaway, F. and Tunley, D. eds. *Australian composition in the twentieth century.* Melbourne, Oxford University Press, 1978, p.146.

4. Horn, K.A.R. *Op. cit.* p.28.

5. McCredie, A.D. *Catalogue of 46 Australian composers and selected works.* Canberra, Advisory Board, Commonwealth Assistance to Australian Composers, 1969.

6. Murdoch, J. *Australia's contemporary composers.* Melbourne, Macmillan, 1972.

7. Callaway, F. and Tunley, D. eds. *Australian composition in the twentieth century.* Melbourne, Oxford University Press, 1978.

8. Buzacott, M. ed. *Music Australia: a select list of literature, music scores and sound recordings in print.* 2nd edn Sydney, Australia Music Centre, 1979.

9. Australia Music Centre. *Catalogues of Australian compositions. I-VIII.*

10. Pettitt, J. 'Australian music bibliography: a new era'. *Australian academic and research libraries* 8(3): 124-126, 1977.

11. *Australian music sales catalogue.* Canberra, monthly.

12. Murdoch, J. 'Australia Music Centre Ltd'. *Continuo* 5(2): 17, 1975

13. Brook, B.S. *Master plan for the implementation of the World Inventory of Sources of Music Information.* Rev. edn 1978, note p.2.

14. *Ibid.* p.10.

Introductory remarks by H. Sugden

H. Sugden briefly outlined his paper and closed his introductory remarks by drawing attention to his recommendations.

Recommendation 1:

That a general national discography be established which would include Australian music released overseas and overseas recordings released in Australia.

Recommendation 2:

That the Australia Music Centre be responsible for publishing an Australian National Music Bibliography.

Recommendation 3:

That, if the second recommendation is not feasible, the Australia Music Centre play a more positive role in alerting the National Library to material which is published.

Prepared response by P. Crook

H. Sugden's paper highlights the reasons for the poor bibliographic coverage of Australian music and draws attention to the need to do something about it. His paper contains a number of suggestions as to what that something might be, and it is these on which I suggest we now centre our discussions, in order that we may reach some resolutions for action to be forwarded to AACOBS.

I have re-shaped the suggestions into a number of draft Recommendations to be used as a starting point for discussion. I propose to outline these recommendations, and suggest that we then discuss them one by one.

Recommendation 1:

The Australia Music Centre send its cataloguing output to NUCOMUSIC and NUCORECORDINGS and that this data be included in *ANB* as appropriate.

Recommendation 2:

The Australia Music Centre accept responsibility for regular periodic listings of unpublished and "For Hire Only" music.

Recommendation 3:

The Music Board be approached to provide sufficient staff in the Australia Music Centre to allow the previous two recommendations to be carried out.

The first three recommendations deal with the need for a regular periodic bibliography and discography of Australian music. The paper makes it clear that much Australian music remains unpublished or is for hire only and therefore is not commercially available in printed form. The fact that Alberts has now stopped publishing serious music will mean that even less Australian music will be commercially available. Such music is unlikely to find its way into *ANB* and is much more likely to come into the hands of the Australia Music Centre. It would therefore, to quote from the paper, "be a logical step for the Australia Music Centre to assume responsibility for the production of an Australian National Music Bibliography and Discography".

However, we should also bear in mind that the Australia Music Centre has not the staffing resources to undertake such a task on a regular and continuing basis. Additionally we should bear in mind the fundamental responsibility of the National Library for providing bibliographic control of published Australian material. Both bodies have an important role to play in ensuring full coverage. The recommendations suggest one way in which the responsibility may be allocated.

Recommendation 4:

The National Library be requested to allow new entries to NUCOMUSIC to be added into its data base (using WLN) at the earliest possible opportunity, and therefore ultimately into the proposed Australian Bibliographic Network.

Recommendation 5:

The National Library be approached to allow the NUCOMUSIC retrospective file to be entered in the same manner.

Recommendation 6:

Funds be made available or be sought to allow for the entry of the NUCOMUSIC retrospective file (approximately 70,000 entries) into the National Library's data base and therefore ultimately into the proposed ABN.

Recommendation 7:

Funds be sought from the Music Board of Australia Council to allow for the cataloguing of Australian music held in libraries throughout the country and for the forwarding of that data to NUCOMUSIC.

(This will be discussed by IAMLANZ at its Annual General Meeting in October/November and will probably be submitted as a special project from IAMLANZ to the Music Board of the Australia Council. IAMLANZ would then accept responsibility for the administration of the project. IAMLANZ has employed staff for special projects in the past).

These recommendations relate to the point that the National Union Catalogue of Music has a potentially valuable role to play in ensuring adequate bibliographic coverage of Australian music. To some extent it will only become valuable as a bibliographic tool when there is already adequate bibliographic coverage of Australian music, for its coverage necessarily depends on the stock selection of contributing libraries. However, it will become valuable much more rapidly if the important Australian music collection held by the National Library is fully catalogued and entered into it, and if those data are accessible to music librarians throughout the country either by way of a fiche catalogue or on-line. This possibility has of course been made much more feasible by the National Library's adoption of the WLN software and by the recent ABN proposals.

Recommendation 4 suggests that a new NUCOMUSIC file be commenced within the National Library's own data base. Current work being undertaken on a MARC format for music and sound recordings and a trial project being undertaken with sound recordings should ensure that there are no technical reasons why this could not be done.

The fifth and sixth recommendations suggest that, given the comparatively small scale effort involved in entering the retrospective NUCOMUSIC file, and given the enormous benefits which would accrue to the Australian music world, it would be worthwhile both for the National Library to provide storage in its data base and make a terminal available, and for funds to be provided for such a retrospective conversion.

The National Library data base has been referred to throughout. Whether or not that data base forms part of an ABN in the future, automation of NUCOMUSIC would make it much more accessible and greatly enhance its value.

Recommendation 7 draws attention to the fact that there are a number of major music libraries around Australia which, through staffing shortages, are unable either to catalogue their material or contribute to NUCOMUSIC. While this situation exists, bibliographic control of Australian music will remain incomplete.

Recommendation 8:

The National Library be approached to make staff available to permit cataloguing of current material in the Music and Sound Recordings Section of the National Library, and to allow the bibliographic data to be entered directly into its data base.

Recommendation 9:

The National Library be approached to make staff available to overcome the cataloguing backlog of published Australian music and sound recordings held in the National Library, and to allow the data to be entered directly into its data base.

The final recommendations arise from two separate references made in the paper to the National Library's music cataloguing backlog and the lack of staff available in its Music Section to cope with either cataloguing of current material or that backlog. While that situation continues, bibliographic coverage of Australian music will remain less than adequate, because the valuable historical material held by the National Library will remain inaccessible, because NUCOMUSIC will remain unnecessarily impoverished, and because the National Library will be unable to provide either leadership or support for an effective Australian National Music Bibliography and Discography.

Some may think these recommendations hopelessly unrealistic in a time of staff ceilings and shrinking resources. The point should be made that music librarians are very well aware of these limitations. What is being argued is that it is time non-book materials receive a fairer deal when decisions on priorities are being made.

General discussion

It was generally agreed that it would be essential to provide more supporting information and some redrafting before the recommendations should be forwarded to the appropriate authorities.

One particular issue raised by K. Horn was the important role which the speakers had suggested for the Australia Music Centre. He pointed out that it was normal, in Australia, for those libraries which were involved in national bibliographic enterprises to have been established and to be financially supported by governments. This gave such libraries some guarantee of permanency and there was a need to ensure that the Australia Music Centre had a statutory base or at lease some testimonial to its permanency so it was able to demonstrate its fitness to be a partner in national bibliographic enterprises.

J. Simkin also expressed concern at the suggested role of the Australia Music Centre. He pointed out that the Centre had no legal deposit privileges and that it was therefore likely much material would not be received by the Centre. In response to this comment, P. Crook pointed out that the Centre actively seeks out material. Furthermore it was noted that because the Centre has a promotional function, producers of music material are anxious to forward their products to the Centre and there is in fact a strong incentive for deposit.

SESSION 4b

NONBOOK MATERIALS - MUSIC

Paper by H. Sugden - Divisional Librarian, Accessions Division,
The Library Board of Western Australia

Prepared response by P. Crook - Principal Librarian, North Brisbane
College of Advanced Education

Chairman of Session - N. Stockdale, University Librarian,
Flinders University

Principal participants in General discussion

K. Horn - State Librarian, State Library of Victoria

J. Simkin - City Librarian, Moorabin, Victoria

SESSION 4c

DISCOGRAPHY AND THE RESEARCH LIBRARY
APPROACH TO EXTENDED LIBRARY - ORIENTED BIBLIOGRAPHIC CONTROL

G. Stecher

For hundreds of years, libraries have been repositories of books, intended to be used, by the select few, if at all. To the present day librarian, this suggests an idyllic picture of the simple life to be contemplated, rightly or wrongly, with a good deal of nostalgia. The minor ruffle to cloud this state of bliss was caused by nothing more than serials, unpredictable, perverse and esoteric, but these could be tucked away in a remote corner of the library to be taken care of by a sympathetically minded lady or gentleman. Otherwise it was all books, nice cuddly books.

But not all is lost with the golden age for, we are told, the millennium, in the form of the paperless society (and presumably library) is around the corner. No more dirty, dusty books (what about the "cuddly"?) only streamlined keyboards and discreet screens responding instantaneously to all our information needs.

Whatever one's propensities for nostalgia, it is clear enough that the interregnum we are stuck with is complex, messy and turbulent. Since the known beginnings of libraries, which pre-dates the appearance of the printed book by some 2,000 years or so, a major concern of librarians has been with the ways and means of imposing some kind of systematic order on the collection in their care, with the main purpose of providing access to wanted materials. In the last couple of hundred years, the effort put into developing these ways and means, principally cataloguing techniques, has been considerable. Yet as we know only too well, the search is far from over. We have in fact just seen the appearance of yet another set of cataloguing rules and even before their implementation, the foundations are already being laid in some minds for the next version.

It is obvious enough then that the search for the ultimate in bibliographic control in libraries is very much alive and, what is more, is likely to remain so for the foreseeable future. The reasons for this are many and varied. No longer are libraries for the select few, scholarly and knowledgeable about their requirement. Rather, they are catering for a clientele, growing in numbers with increasingly varied and exacting requirements. At the same time more and more of the books coming into the library are anything but cuddly: reports, pamphlets, ephemera and generally printed matter whose status is somewherebetween a manuscript and properly published matter. This material, referred to in German as grey literature, as well as more and more of the material published along more orthodox lines, tends to be composite in content and requires a considerable degree of analysis for effective bibliograpic access. Also coming into the library in increasing quantities are a range of non-book materials, many of which have bibliographic characteristics which differ from the materials carrying the printed word. The problems caused by these materials are largely given away by the word "bibliographic". We have been attempting to bring them under control by means of the techniques which have been developed for the book, and with a multiplicity of more or less equally valid citations. Viewed in this context, the choice of main entry for example is nothing more than attempting to choose the most commonly used citation. In the case of music, however, the multiplicity of access required is due to entirely different types of need. Locating a work of a composer is no different from locating a work of an author and the approach to compositions by period or by country is akin to the subject approach to printed materials. The requirement of a researcher to compare several takes of a work performed by the same artists is something different, however. Also different is the need of a group of performers to locate examples of a particular instrument combination. Satisfying these needs is well beyond the scope of conventional cataloguing, and nothing might be as irrelevant to their satisfaction as pondering the main entry for a disc or an "album".

There is yet another problem area, not limited to sound recordings perhaps, but affecting this medium more than most others. I suggested that there is no ready and rapid access to an increasing volume of material finding its way into a library. The implication of this statement is that some means nevertheless do exist, even if they are less effective or efficient than could be regarded as desirable. The reference is of course to the host of indexing services, union catalogues, bibliographies and lately computer-based information services which, in addition to providing access to external resources, are used to augment a library's own catalogue to retrieve its own resources. The process in fact involves using an enormously complex and extensive bibliographic apparatus for accessing what in most instances is a relatively diminutive collection of documents, very much the proverbial steam-hammer-nutcracking situation. Whatever the economics of using this apparatus are, however, music materials are badly served by it. Such bibliographies and discographies as do exist, are designed for selling materials currently stocked by the publishers and wholesalers and are next to useless for providing bibliographic access to non-current materials, such as those which constitute the bulk of a research collection. There is a special onus, therefore, on a research library to explore ways and means for improved access to such resources in its own collection and to implement whatever system is found to be effective and economically affordable.

La Trobe University Library, like no doubt many others, has been facing this need for some time. Hopes have been pinned on a computerised solution within the framework of this Library's evolving integrated technical services system.[1] The music collection was commenced in the mid-'seventies, building up within two or three years to number 10,000-12,000 items consisting of scores and discs roughly in equal proportions. The commencement of this program coincided with the beginning of the development of a computerised cataloguing subsystem. While it was clear to all that a computerised system for controlling the music collection was ultimately desirable, it was also obvious that a sophisticated system could not be contemplated at that early stage. A further problem was that at the time there was as yet no MARC format for music materials. Any computerisation of the cataloguing of this material would thus have run the risk of sharing the fate of so many pre-MARC systems. The solution adopted was, therefore, a limited interim one: a single entry list was produced using a brief record taken from a full cataloguing draft.

which, after decades of evolution, are themselves still in a state of flux and uncertainty.

A rather different reason for the continued, even increased, activity in the field of bibliographic control techniques, is the advent of the computer. It is not readily admitted, but it is a fact nevertheless that the theory of bibliographic control, like many another theory, reflects to a great extent the characteristics, limitations and economic constraints of the techniques which happen to be available for its practical implementation. The application of computers to bibliographic control represents the introduction of radically changed techniques with greatly extended capabilities and rapidly changing economics. The theory of bibliographic control, cataloguing theory if you like, is inevitably lagging behind. Inevitably because, in a library context at least, the potential of these new tools and techniques has not as yet been exploited except here and there in a most rudimentary way.

The topic of this paper is bibliographic control, in a library context, of music materials, in particular of recorded music. The introductory remarks were intended to suggest that the problems posed by this medium are in fact part of a broader set of problems faced by libraries. Recapitulating briefly, there is more and more material of different kinds accumulating in libraries which is becoming less and less readily accessible. Yet surely, enabling ready, rapid access to information, documents or media, is what libraries are all about. Any solution proposed for improving access to recorded music may therefore have significance beyond this medium; alternately, the choice of a solution should be influenced by its wider applicability in a library.

The special characteristics of, and problems posed by, recorded music have been extensively discussed and will therefore be repeated here only very briefly. The primary characteristic of recorded music, shared with motion pictures among the other media, is that in addition to representing a work created by an author or composer, it is also a record of a performance of that work. This results in two distinct sets of categories of data. In addition many recordings often, more often than not in fact, contain more than one work or more than one performance. In some cases either or both can be quite numerous - ten or fifteen separate works on a 12 inch disc are by no means uncommon. In a library intended to support teaching and research in music history and theory, such as that at La Trobe University, and even more so in a library supporting the training of musicians, access to these works is of course vitally important. Moreover, access is required from a variety of approaches, by means of diverse elements associated with the work or the performance, such as composer, title of the composition, genre, period of composition, performers, instruments, publication series, record labels, sponsoring bodies, to name but a few. Finally, to compound the problem, in many cases identifying the needed items can best be carried out by using two or more of these data elements in conjunction.

The need for multiple access points is of course not restricted to music materials - the complexities of cataloguing books revolve in great measure around the need to provide just this. There are, however, fundamental differences characterising each type of material. In the case of books multiple access is needed because in practice a book is often identified

The draft was preserved for subsequent input, either for a conventional catalogue or some enhanced version of it which was demanded with increasing vigour by the members of the University's Department of Music.

What emerged from discussion and investigations was that, as suggested earlier, even a moderately satisfactory solution would have to go beyond conventional cataloguing, at least for some categories of material, such as certain types of collections (mediaeval songs, folk music, jazz etc.). Eventually, the only solution seen as being realistically attainable, was of the register-with-indexes type. This consists of a base file called the register, containing full descriptive records arranged in some arbitrary (e.g. accession number) order, and accompanied by a series of indexes, each devoted to some access term category, e.g. composer, performance, title, etc. In 1979 a proposal to fund the implementation of such a project was made to the University. Not surprisingly in the present financial situation in universities, the proposal was not successful. However, the project has not been abandoned, but only been shelved for a while until some funds can be found to employ appropriate staff.

In the meantime, in 1976 to be precise, the Library of Congress has published a MARC format for music[2] as did some time later the National Library of Canada.[3] As the plans of our own National Library appeared uncertain and as it was likely that an eventual Australian format would not stray too far from those two standards, it was decided that we would draw up our own format and proceed to extend our computerised system to the cataloguing of music and other audio visual materials. This project became fully operational toward the end of 1979. In line with the established policy of the Library, cataloguing is according to AACR and closely follows L.C. practice. Output is on cards, with a full set of added entries.

While this full cataloguing level of access is a great improvement over a single entry list, it is still far short of what is required and, as I said, the idea of an enhanced system is still alive. Our hopes have been encouraged by the establishment of contact earlier this year with the Institute of Jazz Studies (IJS) at Rutgers University which resulted in our obtaining information on a very interesting project just implemented there. The project is aimed at establishing bibliographic (discographic) control over a collection consisting mainly of jazz recordings. Interestingly, the approach taken is very similar to that contemplated by us, although it goes a good deal further. The system is based on a register consisting of entries for an album and for each work in it. For long playing records a work is normally contained on a band, for 78 r.p.m. records it is a side. The example below shows a record for a long playing disc:

> IJS D000315.00
>
> Jive at five; [the style-makers of jazz, 1920s-1940s] [Sound recording] New World Records NW 274.p1976. 1 disc. 33 1/3 rpm. mono. 12 in. Recorded anthology of American music. Various performers. Recorded 1927-46; originally issued by various record companies. 19271946 3700. Durations on labels. Program and biographical notes by F.Driggs, bibliography, and discography (6 p. ports.) bound in container. Every tub (Count Basie Orchestra)--Melancholy (Johnny Dodds' Black Bottom

Stompers)—What is this thing called love? (James P. Johnson, piano)—What is this thing called love? (Sidney Bechet and group)—Pardon me, pretty baby (Benny Carter and his orchestra) —I know that you know (Jimmie Noone's Apex Club Orchestra)— I've found a new baby (Benny Goodman Sextet)—Body and Soul (Coleman Hawkins and his orchestra)—I double dare you (Louis Armstrong and his orchestra)—Passion flower (Johnny Hodges and his orchestra)—Three blind mice (The Chicago Loopers)— Love me tonight (Earl "Fatha" Hines, piano)—Bugle call rag (The Chocolate Dandies)—Wolvertine blues (Baby Dodds Trio)— Slippin' around (Red and Miff's Stompers)—Pitter panther patter (Duke Ellington, piano; Jimmy Blanton, double bass)— Jive at five (Count Basie Orchestra) Dance-orchestra music. Piano music (Jazz) Jazz ensembles. Music, Popular (Songs, etc.) United States. Jazz music. Recorded anthology of American music. Sound recording
oclc2650878

The next example is the register entry for an item on a band of that disc (i.e. band 2 as indicated by the 02 following the full stop in the i.d. number at the head of the record):

IJS D000315.02

Melancholy [by Marty Bloom and Walter Melrose] [Sound recording] Bloom, Marty. New World Records NW 274. p.1976. on track 2 side 1 of 1 disc. 33 1/3 rpm. mono. 12 in. Recorded anthology of American music In: Jive at five. Johnny Dodds' Black Bottom Stompers: Louis Armstrong trumper [i.e. cornet]; Gerald Reeves [or Roy Palmer-cf. B. Rust, Jazz records, 1978] trombone; Johnny Dodds, clarinet; Barney Bigard, tenor sax; Earl "Fatha" Hines, piano; Bud Scott, banjo; Baby Dodds, drums. Recorded in Chicago April 22, 1927; originally issued on Brunswick 3567 matrix no. C-798. 19270422 4104. C6. Duration: 3 min., 7 sec. Program and biographical notes by F. Driggs, bibliography, and discography (6p. ports.) bound in container. Jazz septets. Melrose, Walter, 1889- Armstrong, Louis, 1900-1971, cornet. Reeves, Gerald, trombone.

Palmer, Roy, 1892-1964, trombone. Dodds, Johnny, 1892-1940, clarinet. Bigard, Barney, tenor sax. Hines, Earl, 1905- piano. Scott, Bud, 1890-1949, banjo. Dodds, Warren, 1894-1959, drums. Johnny Dodds' Black Bottom Stompers. Recorded anthology of American music. Sound recording
oclc2650878

The register is accompanied by a series of indexes: composers, performers, performing groups, titles and label names and issue number. Index entries are brief one line entries, as shown below:

Composer Index

ARDEN, VICTOR, 1903- AFTER A WHILE 19220612 Victor 18928. D000616.01

Performer Group Index

ARTHUR PRYOR'S BAND 19080917 THAT RAG Victor 16043 D000513.01

Performer Index

ARCHER, WARD   drums   19240805   BAGDAD   Brunswick   2681.   D000477.01

Title Index

BALTIMORE;   19271024   Dixie Stompers   Harmony   526-H.   D000803.02

Label Name and Issue Index

GENNETT   5261   BABY'S GOT THE BLUES   Miles, Josie,   c4384408   D000038.01

Both register and indexes are on COM fiche, the latter being also available and searchable on-line. It is of course the five indexes which represent the access devices. There is however no technical reason why other types could not be compiled, derivable from other categories of tagged information, e.g. subject index, instrument index, etc. My understanding is that in fact many more are accessible in the on-line mode.

This is clearly a powerful system, especially with the on-line component. It is also obvious that it is quite expensive to maintain, probably so much so that without special resources made available for the purpose, a general research library could not contemplate a full implementation of it. At the same time, however, it may be questioned if such detailed cataloguing is required in a library like ours. The requirements of jazz and other performance-specific genres present in some respects more exacting requirments than do other types of music. According to some specialists, for example, even the IJS cataloguing would not go far enough.[4] But, as already noted, catalogue provision in libraries has always been a matter of compromise between the desirable and the economically feasible. That fact has not changed; the possibility for obtaining a more favourable compromise has.

A closer look at the cost elements shows that there are two major cost components. One is the labour intensive one of generating the catalogue entries, which evolves not only expertise, but also a considerable amount of manual recording as well as subsequent transcriptions. However, the point to bear in mind here is that a great deal of this work is in fact done now with conventional level cataloguing but in the case of contents notes, for example, remains inaccessible for computer manipulation. Utilizing these data with virtually no additional effort in a computerised system requires no more than structuring them within the framework of an enhanced format.

Another important cost factor is the proliferation of added access points. A disc, for example, containing 15 songs, each requiring, on average, access by a composer, two performers and title, is by no means atypical. Such a disc would generate 60 added entries - and this is not even taking into account access by instruments. A collection of 1,000 such records with one card per added entry would require 50-60 catalogue drawers. On computer printout, the one-line-per-entry-index would run to 1,000 pages. On COM fiche output the index would fill about five fiche. Storing such an index on disc would cost at today's prices about $280 per annum.

These considerations clearly indicate that an enhanced access system, less comprehensive than the IJS system but still offering considerable improvements on conventional cataloguing, is well within the realm of possibilities for La Trobe. The solution envisaged at this point would fall short of providing separate, detailed entries for each work in a collection. Instead the indexes would merely identify the disc or discs in which the indexed items occur. The cost of producing the indexes on microfiche or storing them on-line are sufficiently low to allow for a liberal use of them, for an indexing "overkill" as it were. A large portion of the indexing terms would be generated as a by-product of conventional cataloguing with only occasional enhancements as required. The problem area which needs to be resolved is the question of whether index terms will require standardisation (i.e. authority control for names, uniform titles for terms listed in contents notes, etc.) or whether they can be used in some free form, such as surnames only for well known individuals or names as they appear on the item catalogued. These are questions which can only be resolved experimentally.

The major cost factor in implementing the system envisaged is of course software development. An obvious course for alleviating the impact of this cost would be through a shared project with other institutions. Going on past experience, however, it is rather difficult to work up any enthusiasm about such a possibility. Instead, planning must be based on the assumption that all development costs will have to be absorbed internally within the Library and the University. But there is another way of spreading such costs, namely by widening the scope of the application. This brings us back to the beginning of this paper and the whole question of extended bibliographic control of a wide range of material within the Library. For the software can be designed in such a way as to cope with all relevant tasks, such as the creation of specialised bibliographies, listings and indexing of specialised collections, and the creation of library-specific data bases. The essential feature of such systems is first the easy and rapid input of descriptive and analytical data from the publication in hand (possibly also from other data bases such as ERIC). In many instances at least a part of the input data is created in the early stages of processing, e.g. when an item is ordered. A further requisite feature, realizable by means of computer processing, is the liberal assignment of indexing terms, some automatically obtained from flagged data element components (e.g. title), others assigned from various sources and perhaps by various hands. An interesting feature could be the coding of useful life expectancy in the case of ephemera, which would then provide a means for easy weeding of obsolete material from the collection.

To conclude I should just remind you that libraries are here to stay, at least for a while yet. The reason for this belief is that libraries are still, and are likely to remain, the most efficient means for rapid, ready access to documents and information for large numbers and many different types of users. The emphasis is on the word 'rapid'. The problem faced by libraries is that more and more of the resources accumulating in them are accessible neither rapidly nor readily, though the degree of this varies with different types of material. This problem is exemplified by recorded music. The solution to this particular problem as contemplated at La Trobe is well within our means, though there persists the traditional difficulty with start-up funding. The approach to the solution is experimental and aims to broaden the scope of a resulting application to encompass a wider range of materials. We hope to report on results in the not too distant future.

Viewed in a broader national context, the scheme as envisaged at La Trobe is of limited relevance if only because there is really no national context. Though intended to be implemented within a single library, it is equally suited to large-scale applications. In the more elevated terminology of the art, the project could be described as the creation of library-based and library-oriented data bases. Looking forward to genuine networking, that is networking based on computer-to-computer communication, such data bases will be local modes, both feeding into and being fed by large data bases. The less sanguine among us are inclined to think that these developments are not likely to occur for a while yet even though the technology is already available. But the need is there in individual libraries and they must be satisfied as best they can. Perhaps improved awareness of local solutions will accelerate developments on a national scale.

References

1. Stecher, G. 'Systems development at La Trobe University; going it alone with mini computers'. *LASIE* 8(5): 29-43, March/June 1978.

2. United States. Library of Congress Marc Development Office. *Music a MARC format*. Washington, D.C., U.S. Govt. Printing Office, 1976.

3. National Library of Canada. Canadian MARC office. *Canadian MARC Communications Format : Monographs*. 3rd edn Ottawa, 1979.

4. Gray, Michael H. 'Discography: its prospects and problems'. *Notes* 35(3): 578-592, March 1979.

Introductory remarks by G. Stecher

In a sense the problem which faced La Trobe University Library with regard to music and which is treated in my paper is really a peg upon which one can hang a much broader set of problems which are faced by many libraries. The establishment of a Department of Music and the influx of a large amount of music material including recordings and scores brought to the fore the needs of the teaching and research staff to gain access to this material in some depth. While we were able to do no more initially than implement a manual solution, we have now proceeded further using our computerized system to catalogue material according to AACR level of detail but offering many more access points. This, however, was still not enough.

Much of the recorded music that the Library acquires consists of collections of jazz and medieval music - a curious combination in my view but not as far as our researchers are concerned. A great deal of the material is in the form of collections, and conventional cataloguing does not give access to all the items in a single album. At the time the Library was examining this problem, we became aware of work being carried out at Rutgers University's Institute of Jazz Studies which seemed to provide the ultimate solution. In my paper I have recorded some examples of this work and what it amounts to is that full analytical entries are given to every track or band on a record. It involves a great deal of work which really can only be regarded as archival cataloguing. Every track, if it is the nature of the recording, is treated as a work and a separate entry is made out for that track.

The Library's plans at this stage are relatively sketchy - the full level of desired analysis and detail can not be afforded at the present, but we intend to experiment further in this area. One of the problem areas, which also applies to other non-book materials, is the degree of authority control which one wants established. The Library wants to experiment with a free vocabulary approach in order to provide a basis for applications to many different types of library materials.

Most of the data is present in the contents - the composer, the title of songs or of the piece of music, the performers etc. In the existing MARC format these data are not defined but are mostly crammed in the contents note field. When further funding is obtained we wish to treat this material almost as free text - breaking it down into several categories but without authority control and then using it to produce indexes.

Very briefly I wish to mention that the system I have described in my paper and which is a computer-based one, suits the computer very well. It reflects the current trend of specialized cataloguing not only in this field but also in more conventional areas such as the register and indexes type approach where one has the register - the main file of full records given in a sequential and cumulating order - and the indexes produced by the computer. The indexes may either be very brief or more detailed. The Library of Congress has recently announced that the NUC will follow this pattern. The method I have outlined certainly suits the capabilities of the computer and the advantages appear to outweigh the draw backs. These advantages are that the indexes will be much more up-to-date, and that larger cumulations will be available.

Some of the problems which the system now being developed at La Trobe is trying to solve are related to more general areas. Libraries are increasingly facing the problem of the accumulation of bibliographic data not accessible through the catalogue nor through general tools like national bibliographies etc. What is required and what is now becoming economically viable is to harness the power of computers to deal with this growing class of hitherto lost references. Libraries will be around for a long time to come - their virtue is that they are able to provide access to material very rapidly. The nature of some material acquired by libraries makes this difficult when one thinks only in terms of a conventional catalogue. However, as I am trying to suggest in my paper, speedy access can be achieved by means of the computer.

General discussion

N. Stockdale opened the discussion by pointing out that many of the matters raised by G. Stecher were not dissimilar from cataloguing decisions frequently taken in relation to the preparation of analytic entries for monographic material. He queried whether the detailed cataloguing which was illustrated in the paper created problems with the size of the catalogue and whether the lack of alternative sources of information about the contents of works was a factor leading to this level of cataloguing.

G. Stecher commented that access to music material from alternative sources such as cumulative bibliographies was very restricted. Replying to the query concerning bulking the catalogue, he pointed out that whether a single word or 200 words are used it only resulted in one card. With a microfiche index one has a copy of the complete record with brief access terms either contained on a printed page or on microfiche and eventually on magnetic disc. He then stressed the value of the computer in enabling a library to purge its lists regularly; this was especially important with ephemeral and other material which quickly becomes out-of-date.

Some concern was expressed by H. Sugden about the complexity of the entries. Although there were, in his view, applications beyond the field of music, the level of detail which was outlined in G. Stecher's paper would appeal mainly to discographers and would be very labour intensive. He advised participants that the National Library was undertaking a pilot project to see whether this kind of detail can be applied to Australian recordings in particular.

In response to these remarks, G. Stecher reminded participants that the examples contained in the paper were for archival cataloguing. It was noted that some researchers required even greater detail although analytical cataloguing at that level could not be contemplated especially if such entries were under authority control. Concluding his remarks, G. Stecher pointed out that while lack of authority control would not be a problem in a small collection it would obviously be essential for archival cataloguing in a national bibliography or discography.

NONBOOK MATERIALS   MUSIC

Paper by G. Stecher - Associate Librarian, La Trobe University

Chairman of Session - N. Stockdale, University Librarian,
Flinders University

Principal participants in General discussion

H. Sugden - Divisional Librarian, Accessions Division,
The Library Board of Western Australia

144

NATIONAL UNION CATALOGUES

N. Stockdale

A paper on national union catalogues in a conference on Bibliographical Services to the Nation must cover the role of union catalogues in bringing bibliographical resources under control to enable access to be made to them and to provide services based on them.

Apart from some special subjects such as Australian newspapers and higher degree theses there are no national union catalogues dealing just with Australian publications. It will be necessary therefore to consider national union catalogues covering a wider range of publications within which those concerned specifically with Australian publications will find their interests covered.

It will be necessary also to be clear from the outset what we mean by national union catalogues. The American Library Association *Glossary of library terms*[1] provides a definition of a union catalogue as "An author or a subject catalog of all the books, or a selection of books, in a group of libraries, covering books in all fields, or limited by subject or type of material; generally established by cooperative effort." To define a national union catalogue the phrase "a group of libraries" has to become "all or the majority of the libraries in the country".

A national union catalogue then will comprise the holdings of all or the majority of the libraries in the country which have material relevant to the cover being provided by the union catalogue.

The catalogues

In Australia, the title 'National union catalogue' has been adopted by the National Library of Australia for six union catalogues it accepts responsibility for: the *National union catalogue of monographs* (NUCOM), *Serials in Australian libraries: Social Sciences and Humanities* (SALSSAH), *Newspapers in Australian libraries* (NAL), *East Asian Language Materials*, the *National union catalogue of music* (NUCOMUSIC) and the *National union catalogue of sound recordings* (NUCORECORDS). The National Library also maintains the *Guide to collections of manuscripts relating to Australia*.

There are, however, union catalogues such as *Scientific serials in Australian libraries* (SSAL) maintained by other institutions which are national union catalogues under our definition. In addition there are union catalogues which, although they do not meet our definition, have a national value, for example the *National union catalogue of audio-visual resources in TAFE institutions* and *Serials in education in Australian libraries*.

The needs

Why develop national union catalogues? Why list all the books or a selection of books in all or the majority of the libraries in the country? The first answer most people will give is to bring national resources under control. The reasons why they wish to do this are various. They range from a desire to facilitate co-operation and co-ordination in resource sharing to the provision of authoritative bibliographical data.

Are these sufficiently good reasons for such a major activity? No union catalogue for which there is no real need can survive. Wherever they have been set up around the world, union catalogues have been established on the basis of a perceived need. Where they have not survived it is either because the perceived need was not a real need and the partners in the venture were unwilling to continue supporting the catalogue, or because the needs changed over a period of time and the catalogue no longer filled them. A number of the regional union catalogues which flourished in the United States in the 1950s are examples.

In Australia the national union catalogues unquestionably are filling a very real need. They are the essential tools for inter-library loans. What commenced as a desirable facility soon became a necessity and is now a firmly established part of library services.

From the earliest examples, the major purpose of the national union catalogues was to facilitate inter-library loans.[2] The initial concern was for listings of scientific periodicals but interest soon developed in the periodicals in the social sciences and humanities and in monographs, the latter being seen originally in two categories, current publications and retrospective holdings.[3,4,5,6]

There are no national figures available on inter-library lending nor are there figures on the borrowings of periodicals as opposed to books which would indicate use made of the various union catalogues. However, traffic among the university libraries, for which figures are available, was, in 1978, at the level of about 120,000 items borrowed and 200,000 items lent, for most of which locations would have been sought in the national union catalogues.[7] Extrapolating from these figures to the country as a whole one is left in no doubt as to the importance of the national union catalogues or that they are meeting the needs perceived by their founding fathers.

Other needs for national union catalogues were however also identified and discussed throughout the years of their development.[3,8] There was a strong interest in co-ordinating collection development and in the rationalisation of holdings for which knowledge of resources held in the country was essential. The extent to which the union catalogues have been used in this activity cannot be measured. No records are available of the number of times the union catalogues are checked prior to a decision being taken on the acquisition of an item nor would such records, if available, tell us how valuable the union catalogue was in reaching the decision. Informal comment, however, suggests that the union catalogues are of major importance in resource development activities thus providing a further justification for their existence.

The value of the national union catalogues in providing bibliographical control was also a perceived need.[3,8] Although their role is not that of a central cataloguing agency, the availability of authoritative records assists in the cataloguing operations throughout the country, particularly in the case of the smaller libraries.

From the earliest attempts to establish union catalogues in Australia, national needs have been the main concern. There are examples of regional union catalogues such as that of The Library Board of Western Australia but it is worthy of note that there has never been strong support for regional union catalogues to provide a national cover.

As is well known, the first initiatives were taken in relation to holdings of serials and these pioneering efforts viewed the problem nationally rather than regionally.[2,3,4] The national approach became even clearer with the establishment of AACOBS and its encouragement and support for the development of national union catalogues. It is not important now whether the greatest impetus for the development of our national union catalogues came from institutions or from AACOBS. The important thing is that by the early 1950s there was wide spread recognition of the need to bring national resources under control and the need for national union catalogues to do this.

I do not wish to suggest that this need was ever advanced as a simple concept at any one point of time. It was being formulated at different levels in different places at different times but we can see now that all these efforts were in fact directed towards a common goal.

Mention should be made of the relationship of national union catalogues with other union catalogues.

A number of union catalogues have been planned and set up over the years to meet a local or special need, particularly to provide a subject approach.[9] Such needs will arise in the future as they have in the past. What we have to guard against is the establishment of union catalogues which duplicate the national union catalogues, which direct resources in money, manpower and details of holdings away from the national union catalogues.

Each proposal should be considered carefully to ensure that there is a real need, that the information needed cannot be obtained from the national union catalogues. Further, it is necessary to establish whether holdings will not be more usefully reported to the national union catalogue or that they will not be diverted from the national union catalogue to the new union catalogue, that there will be sufficient editorial manpower available and that the list can be maintained up-to-date and made available to users in a constantly updated form.

Co-operation

Another part of our definition was - "generally established by cooperative effort". This is the foundation on which national union catalogues are built. It is not just the willingness to co-operate which is important. It is the willingness to reach agreement with others on the needs to be met and the ways of meeting them, on the standards to be met and the ways of maintaining them. Reaching these agreements on a voluntary basis has perhaps been the hardest part of the development of the national union catalogues over the years.

This co-operative effort has been strongest in establishing the needs and the ways of meeting them and then in providing entries for the catalogues. Following this comes the problem of collating and publishing the entries contributed to the catalogue. From the very beginning, institutional support for the editorial work and publication has been necessary. The CSIRO, and in its earlier forms the Advisory Council for Science and Industry and the Council for Scientific and Industrial Research, has provided this support for the national union catalogue of scientific and technical periodicals continuously since the late 1930s. The National Library has accepted the same responsibility for periodicals in the social sciences and humanities, for the national union catalogue of monographs, for newspapers and more recently for music and sound recordings.

Our national union catalogues then are the result of a perceived need leading librarians to reach agreement about the best method to meet that need, then being prepared to co-operate in achieving the agreed solution and of direct support being provided by two institutions to bring the product into usable form. These developments have been well documented and do not need to be further detailed here.[2-6,8,10-13]

Meeting the needs

How well are the union catalogues meeting the needs they were originally set up to fill and are they filling them as well as they could?

No satisfactory answer can be given to this question as the national need is the aggregate of each library's own needs to which each library will respond in a different way. The measure of adequacy will vary from library to library and may be the availability of a desired item through photocopying, or by loan, or by a visit to the holding library, or availability for consultation in the local region, or simply the identification of holdings, or the verification of a bibliographical record.

Using university library records again, we find that in 1978 they filled 85 per cent of the requests they received for loans from their own resources.[14] It is not known how many of the unsatisfied 15 per cent were directed overseas. Nor is it known how many of these were in fact in Australia and not listed in a union catalogue, or might have been held in the country as an additional copy and not listed and therefore not available to back up copies listed but temporarily not available. The Tertiary Education Commission's forthcoming evaluative study on interlibrary lending may provide this information.

One answer then to the question "how well are the national union catalogues meeting the needs?" is to say that until they are fully comprehensive, carrying all the records of all the libraries, they must be less than completely satisfactory. However, this ideal state can never be achieved and what we will be looking for is the best cover we can provide from our combined resources. A number of the practical difficulties in achieving the ideal national union catalogue, such as the need to exclude some categories of material and to avoid over-loading the catalogues with entries for widely held titles, are touched on later.

The best test of how well the national union catalogues are meeting needs is to try to envisage the situation without them. Without a doubt the ability of libraries throughout the country to provide a satisfactory service to their users would be seriously impaired and the costs of providing alternative methods of access to needed references would rise dramatically.

148

As we move into the 1980s we have then a series of well-established national union catalogues covering monographs, serials, newspapers, and oriental language material and newly-established national union catalogues of music and sound recordings. In addition we have union catalogues of national value in such specialised areas as audio-visual materials and periodicals in education.

The decade ahead

During the 1980s libraries in Australia can expect to face increasing demands for information of all sorts. The continuing rapid growth in published material throughout the world combined with an increasing demand for it flowing from advances in technology and the exchange of information and world wide rises in standards of living will generate an unprecedented demand for literature.

New methods of communication will permit the delivery of these references more expeditiously, raising people's expectations about speed of service. These new methods of communication will themselves introduce new cost elements and may make some services less accessible to some members of the community.

At present, library budgets appear not to be increasing at the same rate as prices and are losing their purchasing power. Economic forecasts suggest that this will continue for some time. As budgets come under pressure the priorities for their use come under review. Local needs overshadow national needs and decisions on the allocation of resources between, for example, the purchase of books and the maintenance of periodical subscriptions reflect the local view.

The main factors to be coped with in the decade ahead then will be:
(a) the continuing growth in the literature
(b) the need for libraries to be even more selective in acquiring material from within the increasing body of published literature.

It is already clear that the only way libraries will be able to meet these pressures is through co-operative action. There is acceptance of the need to use limited resources effectively, to develop resources more rationally, to be concerned about the implications for others of changes in acquisitions policies and of the cancellation of periodical subscriptions, of the avoidance of unnecessary duplication of expensive or little used material.

Already we have had established co-operative bodies such as CAVAL (Co-operative Action by Victorian Academic Libraries) in Victoria and the N.S.W. Office of Library Co-operation which have among their objectives the co-ordination of library development. The State Regional Committees of AACOBS in a less formal way also see this as one of their objectives. In addition there are organisations such as the State Librarians' Council, the Committee of Australian University Librarians (CAUL) and the Association of Librarians of Colleges of Advanced Education (ALCAE) all of which provide vehicles for co-operative activity.

We can assume an increase in resource sharing with an increase in inter-library loan activity. We can expect this to bring new problems in the equitable distribution of this load between net borrowers and net

149

lenders and in the identification of libraries of first and last resort and with regional and national roles.

We can also expect an increasing interest in resource development including relocating holdings and discarding along with resource sharing. So far our experience has been related mainly to the consideration of single items, usually expensive items, and particular collections. Little has been done to define subject areas for which libraries or groups of libraries will accept responsibility other than, for example, the Sydney Subject Specialisation Scheme. What is not clear yet is whether resource development will be regionally based or nationally based.

Some effective co-ordination of resource development is on an institution basis rather than through reference to the published union catalogues. The basis of major co-operative activity however is the identification of resources across a range of institutions and this can only be done satisfactorily through union catalogues. Any increase in co-operative activity will make the national union catalogues that much more important.

National versus regional

To what extent will national union catalogues be of use in the development of resources regionally if that is the way development goes? We have already referred to CAVAL and the OLC as examples of regional activity. Other libraries tend to come together into regional groups on the basis of their interests and funding, for example the Committee of College Librarians (COCOL) in South Australia. What would be the respective roles of a CAVAL-type data base with holdings information and the national union catalogues? Would a CAVAL-type data base confine itself to monographs and if so would the member libraries continue to forward entries to NUCOM or would it be assumed NUCOM would obtain this information from CAVAL? Would regional groups want to have regional union catalogues of serials? Would this information be readily available outside the region?

There is no evidence at this stage to suggest that regional co-operative activities are being designed to make the regions independent of national activity. Rather, it appears they are designed to lead to greater efficiency within the region. It is to be hoped they will not focus too narrowly on regional concerns at the expense of the national interest. Just as no one library can be all things to all men, so a regional grouping must depend on outside resources. Knowledge of material held nationally will therefore continue to be essential although there may be different needs for the material covered by the various catalogues.

Adequacy of the catalogues for the decade ahead

Recognising their central role, let us examine the adequacy of the national union catalogues to fill this role in the decade ahead under the headings:

(a) comprehensiveness of cover
    (1) by subject or form
    (2) by libraries contributing

(b) standards for entries
(c) maintenance
(d) publication.

Comprehensiveness of cover

We have already made the observation that it is impossible to achieve the ideal national union catalogue, that is, embracing all the holdings of all the libraries in the country. The existing national union catalogues are broadly based which has facilitated the achieving of a comprehensive cover by subject or form.

Subject groupings are limited to two for periodicals and to music. All periodicals therefore will be in one or the other of the union catalogues of serials. Groupings by form cover the easily identified areas of newspapers, East Asian language material and sound recordings and manuscripts.

The *National Union catalogue of monographs* is a main entry listing only.

Over the years the union catalogues have defined their scope with some precision[15] and we are all aware of the categories of material excluded. These are continually under review and can be expected to be adjusted in the years to come as they have in the past. In terms of knowing what it is expected will be contributed to the union catalogues and what can be located through them there is no barrier to a satisfactory cover.

The major problem is deciding which libraries should contribute. For the catalogues to be fully comprehensive, entries should be contributed for all material held by all libraries. This is not practical, mainly in terms of the extensive duplication of widely held items, the inclusion of much material with a relatively short life or which has interest to a small section of the community only. Examples would be curriculum material held in school libraries or hobby and do-it-yourself publications. On this basis entries from school and public libraries would be best restricted to material one would not expect to find there. There is also material of specialist interest such as technical reports of U.S. Government-sponsored research, development and engineering and the publications of institutions for which there are other satisfactory methods of establishing access, the inclusion of which would add unnecessary extensive detailed entries.

Equally important perhaps is the problem of including entries from libraries which subsequently may not be able to maintain the flow of further entries or which may not be able to meet requests for access to the items listed. There is an implicit assumption that libraries contributing to union catalogues are prepared to make their resources available for use. Entries from libraries which cannot make them available could be misleading for resource sharing and development.

The balance is between the risk of overloading the catalogues with unnecessary entries, with the associated editorial and maintenance problems and the risk of not including unique locations or sufficient locations to provide adequate backup for overall needs.

Information supplied by the editors of SSAL and SALSSAH in relation to libraries in South Australia highlights this problem. Some 56 South

Australian libraries contribute to the 2 catalogues. It would appear there could be up to 15 special libraries in South Australia which are not contributing entries to either union catalogue. Some of these have worthwhile collections in their special areas.

Of the libraries contributing entries several have not sent any entries forward to SSAL for up to 20 years at the time of the survey. Others have not contributed for periods of 5 to 10 years. It could well be that there have been no changes to report. In some cases staff changes and staff shortages in small company libraries with minimal staffing anyway have led to temporary or permanent breakdown in contributing entries. Generally, however, the libraries concerned are small libraries with only one or two staff members which find it difficult to undertake an additional responsibility. The problem seems to be not as bad with SALSSAH, most of the contributors to which are institutions or government departments.

Standards for entries

The maintenance of satisfactory uniform standards for entries in all the catalogues is important both for their use as bibliographical tools and to avoid the confusion for users which results from different forms of entry in the different catalogues.

Widespread use by libraries in Australia of the Anglo-American Cataloguing Rules has meant that most entries are contributed in an acceptable form. This has made it easier for the editorial staffs of the union catalogues to maintain the high standards they have set. Entries in NUCOM where there is only a minimum of editorial revision undertaken provide many examples of the problems of achieving satisfactory standards.

Equally important is the need to hold down editorial and maintenance costs. The higher the standard of the entries contributed the easier this is to do. All the national union catalogues have clear directions to contributors. Unfortunately it appears not all contributors are concerned or able to observe the directions. Use of ISSN's may help here.

A major development during the next decade must be the adoption of AACR2. This will have implications for the contributing libraries, for the editorial staffs and for the users of the catalogues. What will be the problems for the editors of the union catalogues if entries are forwarded in a variety of forms for a number of years?

The timetable for the adoption of the new rules by individual libraries and by the union catalogues will need to coincide to some extent if major alterations to entries are to be avoided. The timetable also presumably will need to be related to the introduction of machine-readable records by contributing libraries and the further development of their machine-readable data bases by the union catalogues.

In considering these problems we must not overlook the consequences for users of the catalogues. Each of the catalogues has a substantial body of records in published form under AACR1 and it is unlikely they will be recatalogued to AACR2 quickly. For some time then users, both the public and library staff, will have to be familiar with two sets of cataloguing rules.

The amount of manual editing presumably will be reduced with direct inputting of machine-readable data. As more libraries develop the capability to send entries forward in machine-readable form, new editorial techniques will become necessary. Will libraries be able to add and withdraw their own locations and holdings to records established by the union catalogue editors?

These are serious questions. Some of the unfortunate current lapses in contributing entries are because the contributing libraries are in the process of changing over to machine-readable records and want to send their entries forward in this form which the union catalogues are not yet ready to accept.

Maintenance

The maintenance of the union catalogues will become increasingly important especially with the adoption of the new cataloguing rules. The changeover to machine-readable data, the manipulation of that data and the editing of it will introduce new costs for the institutions undertaking this work.

Similarly the growth in the body of records to be handled will make the work more complex. Already we are talking about some 60,000 titles in SSAL, 48,000 in SALSSAH and 9 million entries in NUCOM. Libraries contributing to SSAL number nearly 500 compared with only half that number contributing to its precedessor the *Union catalogue of scientific and technical periodicals in the libraries of Australia* in 1951. When the first compilation of SALSSAH was completed only twenty years ago it held only 19,277 titles. Of the 9 million entries in NUCOM, 2 million are in the cumulating supplement which commenced when the main sequences were integrated and closed only five years ago.[16,17,18]

This rapid growth has made maintenance difficult and on occasion both the CSIRO and the National Library have had to make special arrangements to provide extra staff to bring the maintenance of the catalogues up to date or to prepare them for publication.[16,18] A continuing growth in the number of entries for whatever reason will impose severe strains on the supporting institution.

The effects of these difficulties are already apparent. The decisions to revise through supplements flow in part from these difficulties. They have also led to the consideration of ways of containing the growth of the volume of records.

Recently a Serials Rationalization Project pilot study was initiated by the Victorian Regional Committee of AACOBS and is being undertaken by the State Library of Victoria and the CSIRO. One of the objects of the project is to reduce the costs involved in producing SSAL, including the cost of converting manual files to machine-readable form. It is hoped this can be achieved by reducing the voluminous entries which result from recording all locations of widely held titles.

Publication

If the union catalogues are to fill the need for which they were established they must be readily accessible to all the libraries, small as well as large, which contribute to them and use them. They must therefore be in a form which is not too expensive, and not too dependent on expensive technology. They must be updated at regular and frequent intervals if they are to be fully effective for the variety of uses we have identified for them.

Publication problems have been important in the taking of decisions relating to revision and updating and have led to the use of supplements for this purpose. At the same time advantage has been taken of new publishing techniques, and microfilm and microfiche are firmly established as publication formats. The use of machine-readable records has made possible the shift to COM microfiche. It has also permitted the publication of additional access points in the case of SSAL.

What will be the next stage? Will we move on to online access in the next decade? Is there a risk that this next step might see the end of alternative hard copy formats in print or on film? Will this be a feasible development? Are we entitled to assume that every library in the country which wishes to consult a national union catalogue can be equipped for online access? Will all the national union catalogues need to develop in the same way?

Financial support

A number of the difficulties we will have to overcome appear to stem from financial problems.

We are talking of national union catalogues which are based on co-operative activity among libraries with direct support from two major institutions. The co-operating libraries prepare and contribute entries and subscribe to the published product. The National Library and the CSIRO provide institutional support for the maintenance and publication of the catalogues. In other words an ongoing activity on which the nation depends for the efficient and effective undertaking of its business is being run on a voluntary co-operative basis without specifically identified funding. Is this a sound basis for such an important facility? Is direct financial support an alternative? If so, for what aspects of the union catalogue activity? Is help needed for editing, maintenance or publication?

How great is the risk that an appeal for direct financial support would be received with a lack of understanding of the contribution made by all involved and a demand that the catalogues be made cost effective, that is, that they be made to pay for themselves? Such a response could mean the end of the union catalogues. With the variety of authorities, bodies and organisations funding the libraries, a workable formula for funding on a cost effective basis would be difficult to achieve. For each library the identification of the cost of contributing entries would have to be established as it would, within the institution at least, be an element in determing cost effectiveness.

If, for example, the concept of cost effectiveness led to a subscription which priced the published product out of the reach of smaller libraries, could one reasonably expect them to continue contributing entries to something they could not use?

The financial position of the national union catalogues needs to be kept in mind also in discussions on charges for inter-library loans. Any proposal to introduce charges for loans would have to recognise how heavily dependent the inter-library loan system is on the national union catalogues and include some provision for financial support for the catalogues.

We come back to co-operation and the need to recognise that every library has its own primary users. The extent to which it can consider co-operation with other libraries will be influenced by what is perceived to be the benefit for its own users. If it is thought the catalogues could be made financially independent national considerations may well take second place.

Summary

This survey of the national union catalogues has identified a number of matters in relation to the national union catalogues on which we need to reach agreement if they are to continue to fill their vital role in the years ahead.

The first relates to the cover provided by the catalogues. Are we satisfied that the cover is sufficiently comprehensive in each case? Would extending the cover bring in sufficient uniquely held titles or important additional locations to justify the effort involved? Would the libraries contributing these new locations be able to provide access to the material? Would it bring in a disproportionate number of widely held titles of questionable value which would introduce additional editorial, maintenance and publication problems?

The next group of matters relate to the editing and maintenance of the catalogues. This work is undertaken by two institutions, the National Library of Australia and the CSIRO from within their established resources. Can they continue to edit and maintain the catalogues without specifically identified funding in the face of an increasing work load and budgetary problems within the parent institutions?

Similarly, there are budgetary problems in relation to publication of the catalogues which at present is on a cost recovery basis. For the catalogues to be fully effective they must be widely available. If the cost of publication rises beyond the means of the smaller libraries they will not be able to afford them. Already only the major libraries, it appears, have ready access to NUCOM on microfilm.

These publication cost problems are reducing the publishing options. The three major union catalogues are now each in two alphabetical sequences which impairs the efficient use of them and will pose further problems when the new cataloguing rules are adopted. Can publication continue to be on a simple cost recovery basis?

Then we have to reach a view of the role of the national union catalogues in supporting inter-library activity, whether it be for sharing resources or developing them. What might be the effect of regional development, particularly regional union catalogues based on bibliographical data bases? What can we learn from overseas experience?[19]

The important thing about posing these questions is that they show up the interlocking nature of all matters relating to the national union catalogues. We must avoid taking decisions in one area without complete understanding of the implications for other areas.

Implicit in the Victorian pilot project referred to above is that certain libraries may accept a particular responsibility in relation to certain serial titles, that is, to maintain files and make them available. What may emerge is the identification of new roles for certain libraries not based on any national or regional consideration of roles but because of maintenance problems with a union catalogue. If some libraries are to take on new roles in the 1980s should they become established on an ad hoc basis as a solution to problems in union catalogues or should they be identified in a more formal way?

What will be the national responsibilities of libraries undertaking co-operative activities regionally? Will these libraries maintain national responsibilities or will they start to seek some form of support for what they may come to see as a secondary role? If regional groups do not make their holdings known nationally can other libraries continue to co-operate with them?

We need to remember the implicit assumption that libraries contributing to the union catalogues are prepared to make their resources available for use. And we have to be careful not to think narrowly just of borrowing. The first need is to establish that an item exists in the country. Then we determine the basis of access to it, by loan, by photocopying or by use on the premises. There will always be material a library will be reluctant to lend just as there will be material which it would want to ensure was used under supervision. What is important for Australia is to know what is held nationally and the only effective way of doing this is through national union catalogues.

References

1. American Library Association. Editorial Committee. Subcommittee on Library Terminology. *A.L.A. glossary of library terms.* Chicago, American Library Association, 1943.

2. Ifould, W.H. 'The technologist and bibliographical research'. In Australian Institute of Librarians. *Proceedings, second annual meeting and conference...* Adelaide, Australian Institute of Librarians, 1940, pp.92-98.

3. Binns, K. 'The need for library cooperation'. In Australian Institute of Librarians. *Proceedings, 3rd and 4th annual meetings and conferences...* Canberra, Australian Institute of Librarians, 1944, pp.91-103.

4. Green, H.M. 'Presidential address'. In Australian Institute of Librarians. *Proceedings, 5th conference...* Melbourne, Australian Institute of Librarians, 1947, pp.19-31.

5. Raymond, I.D. 'The national union catalogue of Australia'. In Library Association of Australia. *Impact: addresses and papers read before the 12th biennial conference...* Hobart, The 1963 Conference Committee of the L.A.A., 1963, paper XXVIII.

6. Raymond, I.D. 'The national union catalogue of monographs'. *Australian library journal* 11: 109-115, July 1962.

7. *Australian and New Zealand university library statistics.* [Supplement to *Australian academic and research libraries*]

8. 'McCallum, C.A.' 'Reference services'. In Library Association of Australia. *Proceedings, 7th Conference...* Sydney, Library Association of Australia, 1952, pp.76-82.

9. For example,
   Slattery, Kevin P., ed. *Physical education serials in Australian libraries: a union list.* Clayton North, Rusden State College Library, 1976.

   Salisbury College of Advanced Education. *Union list of periodicals in S.A. college libraries and allied institutions.* 1974.

   University of Newcastle. Library. *Union list of serials held in libraries of the Newcastle region.* 4th edn 1975.

   Library Association of Australia. Special Libraries Section. New South Wales Division. *List of periodical holdings in special libraries in N.S.W.* 1968.

10. Price, A.G. 'The role of the National Library in the development of the library resources of the nation'. In Library Association of Australia. *Library resources for the nation: papers given at the eleventh conference.* Melbourne, the 1961 conference committee for the Library Association of Australia, 1961, pp.60-71.

11. Conochie, Jean A. '"Scientific serials in Australian libraries"; pastpresent - and future?'. *Australian special libraries news* 6: 18-19, March 1973.

12. 'Union catalogues of periodicals in the social sciences and humanities'. *Australian library journal* 11: 115-116, July 1962.

13. Kent, Adelaide L. 'Union catalogues with special application to Australian libraries'. In Library Association of Australia. *Proceedings, 8th conference*. Sydney, Library Association of Australia, 1956, pp.95-106.

14. Tertiary Education Commission. Statistics. Form no.302 *Library transactions...*

15. National Library of Australia. *Guide to the national union catalogue of Australia.* 4th edn [Canberra] National Library of Australia, 1978.

16. National Library of Australia. *Annual report* 1st- 1960/61-

17. National Library of Australia. *For information* 1971-

18. Australia. Commonwealth Scientific and Industrial Research Organization. Central Information Library and Editorial Section. *CILES report* 1973/75-

19. For example,
British Library. *Access to serials, report of a working party convened by the British Library* 12 April 1978.

Introductory remarks by N. Stockdale

N. Stockdale introduced his paper by drawing attention to the major points which he had covered.

Prepared response by P. Dawe

In a closely-argued and well-rounded paper, Mr Stockdale defines his subject, discusses the compilation, use, and support of our national union catalogues and raises a number of pertinent questions about their long-term viability.

Union catalogues, he says, have been established on the basis of a perceived need and he states, that in Australia from the outset, the national union catalogues are unquestionably filling a very real need. What commenced as a desirable facility soon became a necessity.

He suggests that there are three basic needs being met by the national union catalogues:

1. they are essential tools for inter-library loans;
2. the effective co-ordination of collection development, and the rationalization of holdings depend on knowledge of resources held throughout the country; and
3. they play a very important role in providing bibliographical control.

As Mr Stockdale says at the bottom of page 138:

> Although their role is not that of a central cataloguing agency, the availability of authoratitive records assists in the cataloguing operations throughout the country, particularly in the case of the smaller libraries.

As a foreword to the section on 'Co-operation', Mr Stockdale warns of the dangers inherent in the establishment of local and regional catalogues. He argues convincingly that such development must not be at the expense of the national union catalogues.

Union catalogues depend for their existence on co-operation, but as Mr Stockdale says it is "not simply a willingness to co-operate, it is also a willingness to reach agreement with others on the needs to be met and the ways of meeting them, on the standards to be met and the ways of maintaining them".

In addressing the question of how well the national union catalogues are meeting needs at the moment, he suggests one envisages the situation without them. He concludes that:

> without a doubt, the ability of libraries throughout the country to provide a satisfactory service to their users would be seriously impaired and the cost of providing alternative methods of access to needed references would rise dramatically.

Having sketched the growth and current utility of the national union catalogues, Mr Stockdale then turns to the principal interest of the session, which is to examine the growth, development and use of the national union catalogues in the decade ahead. He suggests that the main factors to be coped with will be:

1. the continuing growth in the literature;
2. the need for libraries to be even more selective in acquiring material from within the increasing body of published literature.

Implicit in this second consideration, is the rising cost of material and the declining purchasing power of libraries. Emphasizing first the inter-library loan question, he assumes an increase in resource sharing with an increase in inter-library loan activity. He believes that, in turn, this will bring new problems in the equitable distribution of this load between net borrowers and net lenders; in the identification of libraries of first and last resort; and with regional and national roles. But he says that it is not yet clear whether resource development will be regionally or nationally based, although again he emphasizes that any increase in co-operative activity will make the national union catalogues so much more important; a point he continually emphasizes, notwithstanding the creation and development of regional type catalogues which he typifies as the "Caval-type data base". In discussing the question of comprehensiveness, he raises two quite fundamental questions relating to the continuing obligation of libraries to maintain the flow of entries and the implicit assumption that libraries contributing to union catalogues are prepared to make their resources available for use.

Another major question which he addresses is the need to strike a balance between the risk of overloading the catalogues with unnecessary entries with the associated editorial and maintenance problems involved, and the risk of not including unique locations or sufficient locations to provide back-up for overall needs. These are important questions which this session should consider.

Reference was made earlier to the question of standards of entries and Mr Stockdale returns to this topic to discuss problems for both compilers and users inherent in the adoption of AACRII. Clearly, this is another major area for discussion. Important questions are also raised by the developing capability of libraries to send forward in machine-readable form. I question whether there will be a need for new editorial techniques as such, but certainly new standards and appropriate protocols will become necessary. It is perhaps worth observing at this point that the argument used by some libraries which presently refuse to submit manual entries on the grounds that their records are now in machine-readable form are ill-founded. The facts which support this statement are as follows: most, if not all of the libraries in this category are CAE's. An average university library submits 35 entries per month to SSAL. This figure includes new titles, amendments and deletions. It is reasonable to assume that SALSSAH receives about the same, making a total of 70 entries per month. So that the "enormous" burden we are asking these libraries to shoulder is approximately one and quarter hours per month of a clerical assistant's or typist's time. I emphasize that this refers to the serial lists only - NUCOM is quite a different matter.

Mr Stockdale states:

> If the union catalogues are to fill the needs for which they were established, they must be readily accessible to all the libraries, small as well as large, which contribute to them and use them.

Some may wish to make a distinction between the two qualifications at the end of the last sentence. The union catalogues should certainly be available to those who contribute to them, but should the union catalogues automatically be available to those who use them either for inter-library loan or for the other two purposes listed earlier, but while in a position to do so, do not contribute to them? As we have noticed, the union catalogues are entirely dependent on voluntary co-operation. If some libraries are unwilling to shoulder their responsibilities, however meagre, should they be able to claim an automatic right of access to what is essentially the work of others, without qualification? This again, I believe, is an important question which needs to be addressed and resolved.

In the final paragraph of this section of his paper, Mr Stockdale asks a number of pertinent questions about the future structure of the union catalogues. For what they are worth, my answers to these questions are that we shall move to on-line access over this next decade, but this will not see the end of alternative hard copy formats, certainly on film. The latter has proven itself a flexible and economical medium. On-line access will be reserved, at least initially, for consultation of the most recent addition to the files, while hard copy forms, mostly microfiche, I would think, would be used for the storage of the main body of the data base.

It is in his discussion on financial support that Mr Stockdale raises some of the most difficult and important questions relating to the long-term viability of the union catalogues. As he says:

> An on-going activity on which the nation depends for the efficient and effective undertaking of its business, is being run on a voluntary co-operative basis without specifically identified funding.

He asks whether this is a sound basis for such an important facility. He rightly points out the dangers of meeting any demands that the catalogues be made cost effective and that, in short, they pay for themselves. As he says, with the variety of authorities, bodies and organizations funding the libraries, a workable formula for funding on a cost-effective basis would be difficult to achieve. In fact, I believe such a basis would be virtually impossible to find.

The union catalogues are national services of major importance and must be recognized as such with adequate funding provided at the federal level. Contributions to the maintenance of the union catalogues can be only on a voluntary co-operative basis, but to use access to the catalogues as the carrot to induce libraries to contribute would only result in a massive extra task for the editorial staff in monitoring continued contributions.

This problem was shown up in the days when "Pitt's Catalogue" was supplied free to contributors. Numbers of libraries made an initial contribution and were never heard of again. Mr Stockdale's reference to due account being paid to the importance of the union catalogues in any proposal to institute charges for inter-library loans, could form the bais of ensuring that non-contributing libraries paid in cash for their non-co-operation as they would be complete non-lenders.

In his summary; Mr Stockdale re-capitulates the principal arguments of his paper:

1. Are we satisfied that the coverage of the union catalogues is sufficiently comprehensive?
2. Can CSIRO and the National Library continue to edit and maintain the catalogues from within their established resources in the face of an increasing workload and budgetary problems within the parent institutions? This is something which only the two bodies themselves can answer.
3. Allied with this question is that of cost of production and distribution. Mr Stockdale asks: "Can publication continue to be on a simple cost recovery basis"?
   He points out the need for the union catalogues to be widely and relatively cheaply available.
4. What might be the effect of regional development, he asks, particularly regional union catalogues based on bibliographical data bases? Earlier he argued that regional developments should not be at the expense of national union catalogues.

I do not think anyone would dispute the claim which Mr Stockdale makes for the value and place of the national union catalogues. What he has done so successfully in his paper, is to highlight many of the problems and difficulties facing us in the next decade. In so doing, he has raised many important questions which I have attempted to identify, and which will most profitably and usefully be discussed at this session.

Prepared response by H. Groenewegen

I find Mr Stockdale's paper a very timely one for two reasons. The first is a purely personal one. A few months ago many of us were assembled at a similar meeting in Canberra on national collection building. At that meeting I expressed my view of the need to stop talking about building collections and to discuss how to make the existing collections more accessible to a wider range of users. At this Conference we are clearly talking about providing access to collections and while at the Canberra meeting I was not permitted to express my thoughts fully, I now have that opportunity. The second reason why Mr Stockdale's paper is a timely one is because of the ABN proposals with which most of you are familiar. These will change our assessment of the national union catalogue question quite significantly and it is important for us to keep these proposals in mind. I am unsure as to how long it will be before the effects become obvious but in any case they are on the horizon.

The question of national union catalogues, as indicated in P. Dawe's introduction, is one that is full of contradictions and paradoxes. There are many difficult problems to be solved in the area of national union catalogues and what I wish to do is to go through Mr Stockdale's paper and point out some of these contradictions and paradoxes, and the difficulties they give rise to.

The first area is the one that relates to the functions of national union catalogues: interlibrary loan, collection rationalisation and shared cataloguing. Those functions themselves possess an inherent paradox. If national union catalogues are thought of as basically a location tool they probably do not require very detailed entries but could make do with simple entries. On the other hand, if they are considered as shared cataloguing tools, then of course much more detailed bibliographic descriptions are required. Which side do we come down on? Certainly the issue of costs and difficulties of maintenance become a little less if we adopt abbreviated entries which are sufficient to provide location information only. On the other hand, the question of using them as bibliographic tools for bibliographical control is one which libraries are very dependent on and these two sides need to be balanced.

A paradox is also evident when the question of coverage is examined. On the one hand we wish to see as wide a coverage as possible so as to ensure that the total resources of the nation are available. On the other hand, as Mr Stockdale points out, there are other areas where the net should possibly be drawn more tightly and where it might be decided that certain material should not be included. Some of these categories are: ephemeral material such as school curriculum materials or hobby books, material available from central depository stores, U.S. government research reports, United Nations publications, publications of national and state governments. Should these types of material be included?

Should libraries be permitted to contribute entries to the national union catalogues if they are unable to guarantee access to it or if they can not guarantee maintaining their entries? Again we have a paradox and are unsure of how comprehensive we should be and where the line should be drawn.

The question of maintenance has become a paradox and becomes more so as we look at the ABN proposals. Anyone who has examined these proposals carefully will have noted that until now NUCOM has been maintained by the National Library at very great expense particularly in terms of the staff effort involved in maintaining that catalogue. However, with the ABN proposals there is a shift of the load, particularly with regard to maintenance, from the National Library back to the contributing libraries. If the ABN proposals proceed as submitted by the National Library then it will cost every library approximately $1.75 to contribute an entry to NUCOM. There is then a contradiction in the financial provision for NUCOM once the ABN proposals become a reality. Do we accept this shift in responsibility to a work sharing and cost sharing arrangement or do we still see the role of the National Library in regard to NUCOM as one in which it should bear the whole financial burden and the responsibility.

The issue of accessibility is also related to this. It is believed that NUCOM should be as accessible as possible to everybody - small libraries as well as large. If NUCOM becomes part of the ABN facility then by definition it becomes more difficult for small or poor libraries to obtain access to that file because they would not possess the required hardware. Even today we find that the microfilm version of NUCOM is beyond the reach of many libraries and it is only because major institutions such as the State Library of Victoria have made NUCOM available that smaller Victorian libraries have access to the resource data. How do we make the file accessible? We want people to contribute entries and to be aware of the national resources yet it is becoming more difficult and costly to do so.

Regionalisation presents us with another paradox. Do we believe, as is pointed out by Mr Stockdale, that NUCOM should be national rather than regional in scope or do we believe that a conglomeration of regional catalogues can achieve more than one single national union catalogue? Is there a case for the distribution of union catalogues along regional lines and are there advantages in that approach? Some of these advantages are exemplified in CLANN, CAVAL and Technilib and in those organizations which are creating their own regional data bases in parallel with the national data base. The advantages are that every library within the regional grouping has the opportunity to have its records entered into the data base and is participating in creating the file with all the benefits of such participation. There is also the opportunity to include far more detail in the data base than is practical with a national data base. Separate copies can be recorded, as can information about particular parts which may be missing, etc.

Should we go from the top to the bottom, with the national data base feeding information to the regional data bases, or is this the wrong way round? This is yet another paradox which requires further thought.

The final matter I want to raise is the role of co-operation. Co-operation as indicated by Mr Stockdale, is the foundation upon which national union catalogues are built but union catalogues can also be the foundation for further co-operation. This is what CAVAL has seen. When it was decided to co-operate the first thing we undertook was to create a data base of our holdings in order to provide an indication of the available resources. In building this data base we are able to provide libraries with a shared cataloguing facility and we are starting to establish a meaningful reciprocal borrowing arrangement. We are also beginning to provide an improved inter-library loan arrangement within the state and are developing a collection rationalization scheme. The one feeds the other and it is difficult to know which comes first.

I have referred to a number of paradoxes and problems which I hope we can now discuss.

General discussion

V. Crittenden initiated the discussion by raising the issue of whether those libraries who do not contribute to national union catalogues should have access to them. N. Stockdale suggested that one solution was to charge differential subscription rates for contributors and non-contributors. In response to this, J. Conochie pointed out that such a decision would lead to constant monitoring to ensure that contributors maintained their contributions to the catalogues. J. McQueen commented that there were many reasons, some of a very practical nature, why libraries do not contribute to union catalogues. She expressed the view that the implementation of differential charging appeared to be against the whole spirit of AACOBS.

The discussion then centred on the relationship of NUCOM, to the ABN proposals. J. McQueen, in commenting on H. Groenewegen's suggestion that participation in ABN will result in contributors paying $1.75 for forwarding each new record to NUCOM, queried whether charging for participation in ABN was unreasonable. She stressed that the ABN proposals were still only under discussion and that no definite decision had been reached. Replying to these remarks, H. Groenewegen agreed that libraries which participated in a network should pay for obtaining catalogue records. He suggested, however, that there were two issues which were involved and which should not be confused: one was the question of selling cataloguing products from the National Library's bibliographic utility and the other issue was the maintenance of NUCOM. If the upkeep of NUCOM were considered a function of the National Library then the cost of the ABN system to the library community should be reduced by transferring resources from NUCOM to ABN.

It was pointed out that the National Library was still discussing the ABN proposals including its relationship with NUCOM and that a discussion paper on this issue was being prepared.

The discussion then centred on the question of the coverage of the union catalogues. M. Cameron expressed concern about the exclusion of popular material or material which was considered inferior, such as hobby books etc. She pointed out that a great deal of this literature was sought after by sociologists and that it was important to ensure that not only the so called "scholarly material" was traceable through union catalogues.

This proposition was accepted by N. Stockdale, although he commented that it could be easily controlled because it was simply a matter of the editorial staff changing the coverage according to the users' needs. In his view, the important question was the ability of those bodies which were responsible for the catalogues to maintain them at the desired level once decisions regarding coverage had been agreed upon. It was pointed out that this was a problem currently faced with SALSSAH. The supplements to that catalogue are not as comprehensive in coverage as the printed volumes; the original guidelines were therefore not being followed. N. Stockdale expressed the view that this was a serious problem, and that either the guidelines should be re-established or the original editorial guidelines should be followed.

Participants noted J. Conochie's comments that the exclusions from SSAL which were outlined in the preface did not appear to create any difficulties. When entries for this excluded material were received they were kept on file but they have very rarely been requested by users. In response to a query concerning editorial policies in relation to material published in microfiche and including diverse collections e.g. the Australian Graduate School of Management's microfiche of annual company reports, J. Conochie expressed the view that it was the function of bibliographies and abstracting journals and not of union catalogues to cover this type of material.

A. Horton stated that there appeared to be a breakdown in voluntary co-operation and that those libraries which expended resources in contributing entries to NUCOM should be able to assume that the same priority is given to such co-operative endeavours by other libraries. He criticized the NUCOM backlog in the National Library and suggested there was a need to establish a contractual basis for such services between the relevant authorities; this would become more important with regard to the machine systems of the future.

The following motion was then moved by A. Horton.

> That the Standing Committee of AACOBS be requested to approach the National Library and the CSIRO to emphasize to those bodies the critical importance of the development and up-to-date maintenance of the respective national union catalogues in their custody for library and information services in Australia.

The motion was seconded by D.H. Borchardt and agreed to by participants.

D.H. Borchardt, referring to A. Horton's comments, disagreed that voluntary co-operation was breaking down. He also asked whether it might be possible to impose sanctions on those libraries which were using national union catalogues but failed to contribute to them.

A. Gilbert commented that since the question of co-operation in the next decade was being discussed it was reactionary to assume that libraries will be required for evermore to produce cards from their automated systems in order to contribute to national union catalogues. She pointed out that her library did not contribute to serial national union catalogues because of other commitments to a joint automated serials catalogue and because of the high maintenance cost. The production of cards for NUCOM was a particular annoyance. She also suggested that it was perhaps unreasonable to query the decision taken by some colleges of advanced education not to contribute to SSAL and SALSSAH. The CAEs were, in her view, the resource poor in the library community and they were containing fewer and fewer unique serial titles.

J. Conochie drew attention to the fact that many libraries were cancelling serial titles and relying on other libraries to provide them when required. She pointed out that the situation was likely to worsen until inter-library loans were costed at their real cost and that at the moment the net borrowers were benefitting.

Returning to earlier remarks, E. Morrison expressed the view that it was the centralized services and not the spirit of voluntarism which was breaking down. She suggested that in response to this breakdown, developments were taking place at the grass roots level which were showing promise of fulfilling some of the functions of the centralized services.

N. Stockdale concluded the discussion by suggesting it was appropriate for those libraries which proposed to charge for inter-library loans to include in their charge an agreed amount of, for example, one dollar to be forwarded to the union catalogue which was used in the transaction.

SESSION 5

NATIONAL UNION CATALOGUES

Paper by N. Stockdale - University Librarian, Flinders University

Prepared responses by P. Dawe - Chief Librarian, CSIRO, Melbourne
H. Groenewegen, Executive Director, CAVAL Ltd.

Chairman of Session - V. Crittenden, Librarian, Canberra College of Advanced Education

Principal participants in General discussion

D.H. Borchardt - Chief Librarian, La Trobe University

M. Cameron - Chief Librarian, Deakin University

J. Conochie - Principal Librarian, CSIRO, Melbourne

A. Gilbert - Western Australian Institute of Technology

A. Horton - University Librarian, University of New South Wales

J. McQueen - Principal Librarian, Bibliography, National Library of Australia

E. Morrison - Lecturer, Graduate School of Librarianship, Monash University

AUSTRALIAN RETROSPECTIVE NATIONAL BIBLIOGRAPHY

P. Fanning

It is a common view that one of the elements in any Australian retrospective national bibliography project would be the filling of the so-called 'Ferguson gap', that is the listing of Australian interest publications issued in the period 1901-1935. It would be reasonable to assume that most Australian librarians would say it is the great lacuna, the major task which, while it remains uncompleted will give rise to endless inefficiencies, particularly in the compilation of subject bibliographies spanning this period. Certainly it is not the only shortfall, but it is undoubtedly a constant source of irritation not only to librarians and bibliographers, but also to historians whose attention is increasingly being drawn to the early and mid 20th century.

The National Library, in accordance with its statutory functions has declared its acceptance of responsibility for compiling and publishing the bibliographical record of Australia. In a relatively recent public statement - the preface appearing in volumes 1-7 of the facsimile edition of Ferguson's *Bibliography of Australia* (p.vii) - it is claimed that

> the National Library, through its publications and its machine-readable data bases, will be able to provide ready access to the total bibliographical record of Australia from 1784 to the continuing present, except for the classes of material that Ferguson excluded in the period 1851 to 1900.

Dr B.J. McMullin, in reviewing v.1 of this facsimile edition in the *Australian library journal* for February 1976 (p.39-40) was critical of this claim

> It is unwarranted to presume...that the new ten-volume *Ferguson* [7 facsimile volumes and 3 additional volumes containing addenda, corrigenda, a register of locations and an index to volumes V-VII] - though inconveniently arranged - will constitute the "bibliographical record" for the years 1784-1900.

McMullin goes on to say that, although the National Library has specifically exempted from this claim Ferguson's exclusions in the 1851-1900 volumes, what is left can hardly be regarded as the "total bibliographical record of Australia".

It may be useful at this stage to set out the main known gaps, including the classes intentionally excluded by Ferguson, dealing with these gaps in chronological sequence.

Pre-1784 imprints

Ferguson stated in his Introduction to volume I (p.vii) that he had chosen to cover the period 1784-1838 as the 'formative period' of Australian history. In his view the "earlier period of sea exploration and discovery from De Quiros and Torres, Dampier and Tasman to Cook, has already been fully treated in easily accessible bibliographies".

Presumably he was thinking mainly of the 1928 edition of the Mitchell Library's *Bibliography of Captain James Cook*, in which his own holdings were recorded. The State Library's publications on Tasman[1] and De Quiros,[2] and the work of Celsus Kelly on Spanish voyages[3] and of W.C.H. Robert[4] on Australia and the South Seas had not then appeared.

In his Introduction to volume V (p.x) Ferguson drew attention again to the pre-1784 period saying that subjects arising before this time "can best be dealt with in so far as they have not been covered already, by specialized bibliographies confined to each particular subject e.g. 1. imaginary voyages 2. Dampier, Tasman, De Quiros, Cook and other early voyagers".

1784-1850

All publications, excluding maps, charts and prints issued without any accompanying text, on which Ferguson had any information, irrespective of whether the actual work had been sighted, have been recorded in the main volumes or the addenda. A further addenda to this period and to the period 1851 to 1900 is being prepared by the National Library.

1851-1900

In his Introduction to volume V (p.vii-viii) Ferguson amended the statement that he had made in volume III concerning the proposed exclusions to the volumes covering the period 1851-1900. He notified that the following had been excluded:

(a) Belles-lettres as covered by Morris Miller and Macartney
(b) Parliamentary Papers and other governmental papers (bibliographies in progress)
(c) Periodicals (newspapers, magazines, annual reports, etc.)
(d) Law) unless directed to the public as distinct from the
(e) Medicine) profession or experts
(f) Science) Medicine and related subjects are covered by Sir
(g) Technology) Edward Ford in a comprehensive (unpublished) bibliography
(h) School books of an elementary character
(i) Programmes (opera-drama-musical); opera word books
(j) Catalogues of sales, auctions, art exhibitions, shows, sporting fixtures and the like
(k) Pamphlets advertising sub-division land sales unless the pamphlet contains historical information and/or local views of historical interest
(l) Memoranda of association, articles and rules of companies, clubs, unions, and other societies, unless early or otherwise notable.

As in the previous volumes, maps, charts and prints were also excluded.

Ferguson goes on to say that he "has endeavoured to act with complete impartiality and has leaned towards inclusion rather than exclusion". This is indeed the case; Ferguson found it difficult to exclude, particularly in categories (d) to (g) above. He could not, for instance, countenance exclusions from the works of James Bonwick, in spite of the existence of an already published bibliography[5] of this author.

Before discussing the post-1900 shortfall, it may be convenient here to consider the serious implications or otherwise of the omissions in the

170

earlier period. In pondering over Ferguson's decision to exclude certain categories, one should not overlook the fact that, when he first announced it, in 1951, he was a man of 70, and he was practical enough to define his task in such a way as to make achievement possible in his lifetime. Even so, it was an optimistic estimate in terms of an average man's life expectancy. In the years after 1951, when his work was concentrated on the 1851-1900 period he realised the need for extending the list of exclusions and stating more explicitly their nature. Where bibliographies were in progress, he thought it reasonable to assume that they would eventually be published, just as he believed in the certainty of his own work being published.

Apart from the inconvenience of not having one comprehensive list, the exclusions are of varying significance. Belles-lettres are adequately covered by Morris Miller and Macartney and it is unlikely that Ferguson would have discovered any quantity of material not listed by them. While in volumes I to IV the listing of parliamentary papers and acts has been a great convenience to scholars, librarians and booksellers, the task of continuing it for another fifty years was one of daunting magnitude. Ferguson was naturally tempted to leave this work to others, knowing also that annual reports and other periodical type publications included in parliamentary papers would eventually be covered by *Serials in the social sciences and the humanities.* The exclusion of periodicals and newspapers also appears justified on account of the various existing union lists.

The exclusions made under (d) to (h) could represent a serious shortfall: the degree of seriousness depends very much on how many items Ferguson consciously excluded and how many he simply did not pursue. Probably there are not a great many deliberately omitted. Ferguson was, of course, aware of the specialised fields already covered by, for example, Musgrave[6] on entomology, G.M. Mathews[7] and also H.M. Whittell[8] on birds, Sweet and Maxwell[9] on Australian law and probably he was confident that Sir Edward Ford's bibliography of 'medicine and related subjects'[10] would eventually be published.

Categories (i) to (k) obviously have some, but in many instances only slight, importance to scholars working in relevant fields. Nevertheless they are currently excluded from *Australian national bibliography* and the reasons for exclusion now are probably similar to those which justified Ferguson in his attitude towards them: the slightness of the material (physically and in its content); the difficulty of making anything like a comprehensive listing and the availability of much of the information in other forms, e.g. newspapers. The last exclusion on the list: memoranda of associations, articles and rules of companies, clubs, unions and other societies is a fairly serious gap, but it seems likely, from a cursory examination of volumes V to VII that Ferguson honoured his own rule more in the breach than in the observance.

Ferguson himself saw the following as the uncompleted bibliographical tasks, which the Commonwealth should cover:
(a) the gap between 1900 and 1936 when the *Annual catalogue of Australian publications* was first published, namely in the year 1936
(b) such other parts of the field up to date which have not been included in existing or contemplated bibliographies

(c) the adoption of a system of progressively keeping up to date bibliographies which are regarded as authoritative in their own sections
(d) combining the whole in a current union catalogue
(e) the compilation of a bibliography of Australian bibliographies.[11]

In the same context he observed that "It is very gratifying to note that the systematic planning of Australian (and wider) bibliographies is now being carried out by a highly competent Commonwealth Committee." (presumably ACOOBS).

Post-1900

While there is no substantial listing devoted exclusively to titles relating to Australia for the period 1901 to 1935, many, almost certainly a majority, of the relevant monographic works can be traced in, at least, two main sources:

Mitchell Library, Sydney. *Dictionary catalog of printed books.* Boston, Mass., G.K. Hall, 1968, 38 vols and 1 supplement.

National union catalogue of monographs. The main file to 1974 and three supplementary files have been issued on microfilm by the National Library,

while newspapers and periodicals can be checked in

Newspapers in Australian libraries: a union list. 3rd edn Canberra, National Library of Australia, 1973-5.

Scientific serials in Australian libraries. Melbourne, C.S.I.R.O., 3 vols Entries complete to July 1975.

Serials in Australian libraries in the social sciences and the humanities: a union list. Canberra, National Library of Australia, 1968-74. A reprint on 33 microfiche was issued in 1976.

SSALSSAH on COM. 1978 to date.

Other sources for the 1901-1935 period include:

Foxcroft, A.B. *The Australian catalogue: a reference index to the books and periodicals published and still current in the Commonwealth.* Melbourne, 1911. [A photographic reprint was issued in London in 1961]

Victoria. State Library. *Classified catalogue of Australiana in the Public lending library of Victoria*, by T. Fleming Cooke. Melbourne, 1936.

Royal Empire Society, London. *Subject catalogue of the library.* London, 1930-31, 2 vols [vol.2 p.1-383 lists material on Australia.]

In addition, the National Library and presumably the State libraries and other libraries that have legal deposit privilege, will have records of receipts from this benefit.

Nevertheless there persists a strongly expressed need for a listing comparable to Ferguson's *Bibliography* or to the *Australian national bibliography*: a listing with an adequate subject approach, and one based on a thorough examination of, *inter alia*, existing subject bibliographies, and compiled with the active co-operation of those Australian institutions likely to have substantial relevant holdings. The view is occasionally expressed that the need for such a listing has become less pressing since the publication of the Mitchell Library *Catalog*. Certainly this is a most valuable reference work, but even assuming that it may be comprehensive or nearly so, by virtue of its size, cost and the varied style of entries it cannot be regarded as a reasonable substitute for a series of compact, easily accessed and handled national bibliography volumes.

The National Library's project to bridge the 1901-1935 gap

The tacit acceptance by the National Library of a responsibility to complete the 20th century Australian bibliographical record dates back to the early 1950s. For many years it had deployed staff, sometimes full time, to assist Sir John Ferguson in the compilation of entries for the pre-1901 period. In 1966 when this project was nearing completion, attention was given to what was described as the closure of the Ferguson gap and consolidation of the earlier *Annual catalogues*. From the outset it was envisaged that the project should cover the period 1901-1950, as listing in the *Annual catalogue* in its early years was known to be inadequate. Government publications, for example, were omitted from the issues for the years 1941-1944.

During 1967 detailed plans were made to carry out extensive work on the retrospective national bibliography. The work program included the coverage of the 1901-1935 gap, compilation of a consolidated bibliography for the whole 1901-1950 period, and thereafter, there were to be five and ten year cumulations. A twelve year program was drawn up, under which, by 1976, not only would the interim and final 1901 to 1950 volumes have been published, but also one ten year cumulation and two five year cumulations to cover the period 1951 to 1970. The program called for a very modest additional staff which, small as it was, unfortunately could not be found. Chronic staff shortages and pressures associated with the move to the Library's present building meant progress was, inevitably, slow.

Recommendations relating to the 1901-1950 volume included the following:

That it list monographs, official and non-official of 5 or more pages, published in Australia or of Australian interest published overseas.

That serials be excluded and issued in a separate list.

That non-book materials, including films, maps, prints and music be excluded, and that separate lists be planned for each of these categories.

That the style of entry be as the then current *Australian national bibliography* entry, though prices of items might be excluded.

That the arrangement of entries be alphabetical.

That the listing be author/title only, but subject tracings be included in the entries so as to allow capability of producing a subject list if resources were provided.

That a preliminary listing of National Library holdings be issued for circulation to other Australian libraries, with the invitation to contribute additional items.

The program for the actual production of the bibliography foreshadowed the possible use of machine-readable records. The National Library's plans were in due course reported to the Standing Committee of AACOBS who resolved at its meeting on 29 March 1968:

> That the National Library be thanked for the report on its programme for retrospective national bibliography; and that the Committee express its opinion that, as far as practicable, publication of a bibliography for the period 1901-1935 should have the highest priority (SC/93/68).

The publication schedule was published in *Australian national bibliography* in 1968. In the 1969 and 1970 issues reference was made to the project but a note was added that the publication schedules had not proved feasible. Although some work was done on the cumulations and one part-time person was engaged to concentrate on the 1901-1935 segment, by 1971 it had become clear that the development of the retrospective national bibliography as a whole would have to be related to the Library's ANB/MARC system.

In April 1972 at the Healesville Advanced Workshop on Australian Bibliographical Services arranged by the LAA Victorian Branch a recommendation was passed that

> action should be taken to fill gaps, e.g. the so-called "Ferguson gap", 1901-1935 in national bibliography and the material omitted from Ferguson, 1851-1900. The National Library should call a conference of State librarians, etc. to decide on a course of action.

It was noted that workshop participants believed that libraries with substantial holdings for the 1901-1950 period would be anxious to help the National Library in compiling the bibliography.

In June 1972 the Library made a careful re-examination of the issues involved, paying particular attention to the possibility of using computer methods in the compilation and arrangement of the bibliographical data, involving either the ANB/MARC format or a simplified version of it.

The possible arrangements for the bibliography were reconsidered, giving attention to the following:

(a) chronological listing, with alphabetical author/title sub-arrangement, and perhaps a subject index as in Ferguson for the 1784-1850 period
(b) alphabetical author/title listing as in Ferguson for the 1851-1900 period
(c) alphabetical author/title listing with subject index
(d) dictionary author/title/subject arrangement as in *Australian national bibliography* for the 1961-1971 period
(e) subject arrangement with author/title indexes as in *BNB* and *ANB* after 1972.

Attention was also given to the possible levels of bibliographical description, as this was likely to be a significant factor in production costs. Levels suggested for consideration were those of:

(a) Ferguson in his *Bibliography of Australia*
(b) ANB/MARC
(c) *ANB* 1961-1971
(d) a check list or short-title entry.

The Library re-iterated its firm belief in the need to give priority to the 1901-1950 period.

Between June and August of 1972 full consideration was given to the several proposed arrangements and formats. The arrangement recommended was a classified one, with author/title and subject index. It was also recommended that the records should be converted to machine-readable form in the ANB/MARC format.

The supporting reasons for these recommendations, which were approved by the National Library Council were:

(a) that a classified, as compared with (1) a chronological or (2) an alphabetical author/title with subject-index or (3) a dictionary author/title/subject arrangement, offered a superior subject approach to the literature of the period

(b) that expression of support for this method of arrangement had already been given with its adoption for *Australian national bibliography*, where it had enhanced the bibliography's value for selection and subject search uses. It was considered that use of the retrospective bibliography would be along similar lines

(c) that conversion to machine readable form would have the well recognised advantages of allowing for economy in updating, interim editions, specialised listings, contributions to international programs and would ensure that the national bibliographic record from 1900 would be in one consistent style.

The revised program again emphasised the need to give priority to the 1901-1950 period, for which an interim listing would be produced within four years for circulation to co-operating libraries, inviting their additions, corrections and amendments. A listing of 60,000 titles was expected. Co-operation with other libraries was regarded as essential if the bibliography was to be, to any degree, comprehensive. To foster this co-operation a meeting of major Australian libraries was proposed. Within a few weeks of the formulation of this plan, AACOBS requested the National Library:

> to convene a meeting of interested parties, including representatives from each State, to examine the desirable content, form and method of publication and to investigate ways in which State Library authorities could cooperate in achieving early publication of the retrospective national bibliography.

The meeting between the National Library and other major Australian libraries with significant Australian collections was held on 18 July 1973. All States were represented except Western Australia and Queensland, but the State Library of Western Australia and the University of Queensland Library provided written comments on the position paper that had been circulated prior to the meeting. This position paper indicated that the National Library favoured a close-to-comprehensive scope for the bibliography with coverage following that of the current *ANB*. Entries would be included for:

(a) all monographs of 5p. and over published in Australia and of Australian association published overseas, including monographs in series

(b) all government publications except individual acts, bills, ordinances and parliamentary papers, State and Commonwealth

(c) all serial titles.

The National Library suggested that the following be regarded as normally outside the scope of the bibliography:

(a) price lists, sale catalogues, etc.
(b) notices and broadsides
(c) programs
(d) off prints
(e) university theses.

The entries were to be descriptively catalogued according to the latest editions of the following international standards

- Anglo American Cataloguing Rules; North American text
- International Standard Bibliographic Description

and the subject index was to be based on the use of PRECIS, with the classified arrangement following the latest edition of the Dewey Decimal Classification. Price and availability notes would not be given. Library of Congress subject headings would be input so that they could form part of the cataloguing data on the MARC records, but it was considered that the subject headings and other tracing notes should be excluded from the printed work. This information was not regarded as essential and its exclusion would result in a 12 per cent saving in space.

The work method proposed was a search of NUCOM for relevant entries, which would be added to the file of National Library holdings and a single cumulation printed. It was estimated that the National Library would hold 60,000 relevant items and that another 10,000 would be uncovered in other libraries. National Library officers would make field trips to list the latter group if this proved necessary.

There was substantial agreement with these proposals though there was a suggestion that not only monographic but also serial parliamentary papers should be included unless the magnitude of the task precluded it. Two members of the meeting agreed to examine the problem. Some reservation was expressed about the inclusion of serials. While it was considered desirable that they should be included, it was agreed that should it become necessary to restrict coverage, serial titles could be excluded, with the option to publish them in a separate listing at a later date. The meeting was told that the National Library would be approaching the Public Service Board for the necessary staff.

The National Library announced plans for a Retrospective Australian National Bibliography (RNB) in its *For information* (no.48 14 June 1974). It reported that staff had been appointed, that work had begun and that a list containing 70,000-80,000 titles would be published after about six years. If only one could say that this might still happen in 1982.

The project started with a staff of thirteen, seven of whom were part-time. Additional staff were to be added in 1975. This did not happen and with the imposition of staff ceilings, the small Retrospective National Bibliography staff were constantly raided to fill gaps in higher priority areas. When the National Library ran into severe criticism at the 1975 LAA Conference for the lack of currency of *ANB*, it was reluctantly decided to suspend work on RNB for 6 months in order to support *ANB*. A skeleton staff was returned to RNB on 1 April 1976 and a revised contingency work program drawn up which foreshadowed that the work would be done in three stages:

(a) completion of descriptive listing with publication of an alphabetical author/title listing of RNB titles on COM microfiche
(b) completion of subject cataloguing and indexing
(c) editorial work and publication in final form.

The revised program did not suggest any intention to vary at all the end product of the RNB project, *i.e.* a major publication entitled *Australian national bibliography*, 1901-1950, and with the conversion to machine-readable form of the records for the 1951-1970 period, the final objective was the production of the Australian national bibliographic record for the 20th century in one consistent format.

A *For information* (no.90 24 June 1976) was issued announcing the revised program, but no date was predicted for the completion of the descriptive listing of in-scope titles.

Since 1976 some progress, albeit slow, has been made, resulting in an assemblage of 20,000 entries, which, on a revision of earlier estimates of National Library relevant holdings, represents about half of the titles expected to be found there. Progress will remain slow while present staff constraints continue.

However, the project could take on a new lease of life if the Washington Library Network were to become fully operational in the National Library and in the libraries likely to be the main contributors. It must be acknowledged that this "new life" could not be achieved without additional staff, but with it, there would be a real possibility of speeding up the publication program. In the interim libraries that might be using the system would have multiple access to the accumulated records that the National Library would be feeding into the system, and in addition, they could themselves contribute entries.

OTHER NATIONAL LIBRARY PROJECTS

Addenda to Ferguson's *Bibliography of Australia*

This project is well in hand and when completed will make a substantial contribution to retrospective national bibliography. As announced in the National Library's *For information* (no.96 28 October 1976), 3 volumes of addenda to Ferguson's *Bibliography of Australia* are planned. These volumes will cover all known addenda and corrigenda, the additional holdings of items by major libraries and an index to volumes V to VII which were not indexed at their first publication.

It is proposed that this index will include entries for:

(a) Authors - in the form allocated by Ferguson
- according to AACR when useful (*i.e.* when Ferguson has used a different approach)

(b) joint authors, editors, compilers but not translators

(c) pseudonyms, if used in the entry by Ferguson, with a reference from author to pseudonym

(d) titles, including uniform titles, half titles, alternative titles when considered useful

(e) additional useful entry points, e.g. name of periodicals from which reprints have been made, place in which exhibitions held etc.

(f) subjects, emphasizing Australian content.

References will be made from alternative forms of names, from pseudonyms when entry is not under pseudonym.

Contributions to an addenda have been sought from other libraries, who have made a good response so that a considerable number of entries have been assembled. The first addenda volume will cover the period 1784-1850. While work is reasonably well advanced, no publication date has yet been set.

One might ask why the National Library has spread its meagre resources to attempt an addenda to Ferguson at the same time as it is lagging in its program for the 1901-1950 volume. The answer probably lies in the fact that when the Library acquired the copyright in the *Bibliography*, it also acquired the unpublished entries for an addenda (many contributed by the Library itself) as well as the work done by Eric Russell on the index to volumes V to VII. Thus it had much of the basic material for an addenda already assembled and publication, even with minimal resources, seemed possible within a reasonable period. As with most similar projects, further examination showed that a fair amount of editorial work was required. The publication date remains indefinite, but, one would hope, figuratively speaking, it is in sight.

Non-book materials

From the outset Ferguson excluded separately published maps, charts, prints, and music, though he never specifically referred to the last mentioned as being amongst the omissions. He did in fact include some albums, but very little separately published sheet music. *Australian national bibliography* has excluded, since 1968, films, maps and prints, and the listing of music has been infrequent. Currently issued films and maps are now catered for by the two National Library publications *Australian films* and *Australian maps*.

Maps

Australian maps dates back to 1968 and there is a cumulation for the period 1961-1973, embracing entries that previously had been listed in *Australian national bibliography*. Possibly the best reference tool for early Australian maps is Tooley[12] but the 20th century is poorly covered. The fact that many important maps are issued in series and can be accessed by accompanying indexes, renders the situation less difficult than it might be. There is still a need for these indexes to be consolidated,

178

with an indication of library holdings. The listing of retrospective maps should be noted as a project for better times.

Films

Films are better catered for. *Australian films* serves as a supplement to the National Library's cumulation entitled *Australian films, a catalogue of scientific, educational and cultural films 1940-1958.* Because it administers the major archive for Australian films, the National Library would be the logical body to take on the responsibility for extending, in due course, the listing of Australian films to the period prior to 1940.

Prints

The Australian Gallery Directors Council is currently studying the possibility of assembling information for a computer-based catalogue of the holdings of Australian galleries and other institutions that have substantial pictorial collections. This union catalogue will presumably concentrate on original works. When, as one hopes, it becomes a going concern this catalogue will be most useful to libraries and particularly to those that have extensive collections of original pictorial items. There is also a need for listing published prints, which are held widely by libraries and have been very heavily used in recent years for book and journal illustration, for the production of films and television programs and the ubiquitous coffee table book.

Early Tasmanian prints have been well recorded by Dr Clifford Craig,[13,14] but there are few reference sources for the rest of Australia. Whether the needed work should be just a catalogue of prints or whether it should have a much wider coverage calls for careful consideration. A pictorial index, for instance, embracing book and journal illustration, photographs, separately published prints and prints issued as volumes or in portfolios would have much greater reference use and could also be a more efficient identification tool than a mere listing of published prints.

Sheet music

Although in principle *Australian national bibliography* aims to cover music, in practice not a great deal has been listed there. There is no published retrospective listing of any consequence and the main record of sheet music held in Australia is to be found in the entries in the National Union Catalogue of Music (NUCOMUSIC) maintained in the National Library. Just as NUCOM has been used as the source for entries for the retrospective national bibliography, so NUCOMUSIC could be drawn on when the time comes to compile a comprehensive retrospective listing of Australian music.

Sound recordings

Although publishing companies have issued catalogues of their own output, and these lists have been regularly updated, Australian interest material is not easily identifiable nor is a comprehensive collection of these catalogues readily available. As with music, the National Library is maintaining a union catalogue of sound recordings, but this project is in its infancy.

179

Periodical indexes - a dream for the future

No general Australian periodical index exists for the period prior to 1945. There are, it is true, many entries for periodical articles in the Mitchell Library's *Dictionary catalog of printed books*, also, E.A. Petherick's Bibliography of Australasia (held in manuscript in the National Library) provides a useful reference, in the main to nineteenth century journals. If it were decided to undertake an indexing project, to cover, say, the hundred years prior to 1945, and concentrating on major journals, it would have the advantage of being a finite task and one for which the relevant material is readily available. While much remains to be done in current listing, this project may have to wait its turn. Nevertheless the idea seems an attractive one, the work involved not enormous and the results likely to be useful. It is a project that seems possible, whereas an index of newspapers for the same period, presents a more formidable prospect.

References

1. State Library of New South Wales. *Abel Janszoon Tasman: a bibliography.* Sydney, 1963.

2. State Library of New South Wales. *Quiros memorials: a catalogue of memorials by Pedro Fernandez de Quiros, 1607-1615, in the Dixson and Mitchell Libraries.* Sydney, 1961.

3. Kelly, Celsus. *Calendar of documents: Spanish voyages in the South Pacific from Alvaro de Mendaña to Alejandro Malaspina, 1567-1794.* Madrid, Franciscan Historical Studies Association (Australia) in association with Archivo Ibero-Americano (Madrid), 1965.

4. Robert, W.C.H. *Contributions to a bibliography of Australia and the South Sea Islands.* Amsterdam, Philo Press, 1969-1975. 4 vols and supplements.

5. Pescott, E.E. *James Bonwick: a writer of school books and histories: with a bibliography of his writings.* Melbourne, H.A. Evans, 1939.

6. Musgrave, A. *Bibliography of Australian entomology, 1775-1930.* Sydney, Royal Zoological Society of New South Wales, 1932.

7. Mathews, G.M. *Bibliography of the birds of Australia.* London, Witherby, 1925.

8. Whittell, H.M. *The literature of Australian birds.* Perth, Paterson, Brokensha, 1954.

9. Sweet and Maxwell, Ltd., London. *Legal bibliography of the British Commonwealth of Nations.* 2nd edn London, 1958. vol. 6, Australia, New Zealand and their dependencies from earliest times to June 1958.

10. Ford, Sir Edward. *Bibliography of Australian medicine, 1790-1900.* Sydney, Sydney University Press, 1976.

11. Ferguson, Sir John A. *Bibliography of Australia.* vol. 5, Sydney, Angus and Robertson, 1963, p.ix.

12. Tooley, R.V. *The mapping of Australia.* London, Holland Press, 1979.

13. Craig, C. *The engravers of Van Diemen's Land.* Hobart, Tasmanian Historical Research Association, 1961.

14. _______ *Old Tasmanian prints prepared in Great Britain, Europe and on the mainland of Australia.* Launceston, Tas., Foot and Playstead, 1964.

Introductory remarks by P. Fanning

My paper attempts to examine the present situation in the general retrospective bibliographical record (or 'core bibliography' as Dr Cope describes it) of Australia. Particular attention is paid to the gaps that remain, partly through the deliberate exclusions of Sir John Ferguson, and to those that may continue to occur, in the two projects presently being undertaken by the National Library:

1. The Retrospective Australian National Bibliography (RNB) 1901-1950.
2. The Addenda to Ferguson's *Bibliography of Australia* 1784-1900.

It also summarizes the progress, albeit slow, made by the National Library to get both these projects off the ground.

The National Library's plan for a Retrospective National Bibliography 1901-1950 was outlined in a position paper circulated prior to a meeting of major relevant libraries convened for 18 July 1973, for the purpose of discussing the content, form, method of publication of RNB and to investigate ways in which state authorities could contribute to the achievement of early publication of this segment of RNB.

At the time there was substantial agreement with the National Library's proposals which envisaged a close to comprehensive coverage. Some of those attending the July 1973 Conference were anxious to see all parliamentary papers, Commonwealth and state, monograph and serials, included and two members of the Conference (representatives of the New South Wales Library and of the Parliamentary Library of New South Wales) agreed to examine the magnitude of the task involved and the possibility of co-operating with the National Library to ensure an adequate coverage of this material.

In October of the same year Dr Cope, at a round table discussion arranged by the New South Wales Regional Committee of AACOBS, raised the question of a separate national bibliography of official publications. Miss Miller's paper in this seminar also refers to this proposal.

While further discussion of this aspect of RNB may be appropriate at a gathering such as this, one must bear in mind that the proposal put forward by the National Library in 1973, was carefully considered by the Library itself and was further considered by representatives of state, University and Parliamentary Libraries and AACOBS. It was then and continues to be the Library's view that RNB 1901-50 should have a scope and arrangement similar to *ANB*. This view, in addition to being well aired at the 1973 Conference, has been the subject of National Library *For information* sheets which have dealt with proposed exclusions. In any serious questioning of this view at this stage, one should consider carefully the implications of any changes - their costs and their benefits. For example, the proposal to exclude serial parliamentary papers, and individual bills, acts and ordinances was based on the knowledge that some indexes to these classes of material already exist, although they may be of uneven quality. To make even minimal progress with RNB has been difficult - to increase the scope or propose a separate listing of official publications may be seen as impossible under present conditions.

The more so when one thinks of the resolutions that have been formulated in this meeting about additional retrospective projects that the National Library might undertake. Frankly, I think it would be unreasonable and impracticable for the National Library to change its plan at this stage. If indeed there is a conviction that the Library's plans for RNB should be questioned, or better if there is a strong desire to participate in them, and to assist in carrying them out, I would suggest directing attention to the project for the *Addenda* to Ferguson 1784-1900, and particularly to the 1851-1900 segment, which presently requires a good deal of further editorial work. Examination of this file, as it now stands, must raise many questions in the mind of the editor, and in my view the principal question is, should the scope of the *Addenda* for the period 1851-1900 conform to that laid down by Ferguson for the main work - involving many exclusions, not only parliamentary papers and items covered by Miller and Macartney but also items such as 'memoranda of association, articles and rules of companies, clubs, unions, etc' unless early or otherwise notable (a fairly difficult ruling to make). If these and other items were excluded rigidly we will then continue to have a situation where there is a considerable amount of material not yet covered by a national bibliography. I have said that Ferguson did not necessarily follow the rules he laid down and nor have those who have contributed to the present *Addenda* file which is awaiting publication.

It contains many entries that could be ruled 'out of scope'. In practice I believe that it would be better to accept them. If this were done, then logically, the compilers should possibly consider searching for other material that may have been consciously excluded by Ferguson, and in doing this there may be a temptation to make the *Addenda* conform more to RNB 1901-1950 than to Ferguson itself.

Some solution needs to be found so that, while keeping to the spirit of Ferguson's principles, an *Addenda* may be compiled that, without making it conform to RNB, would obviate the necessity of going over the field yet again to compile a further *Addenda* consisting of material hitherto excluded from Ferguson.

In order to make such an *Addenda* a practical proposition within a matter of years (as it should be) I would suggest omitting the following on the grounds that there are other listings where these should be found: all material already recorded in Miller and Macartney; parliamentary papers, Commonwealth and state; newspapers; serials; bills, acts and ordinances; and annual and other regular reports. I recommend that literary works not already listed in Miller and Macartney and all works on law, science, medicine, technology, as well as school books, programs, catalogues of sales, pamphlets advertising sub-division land sales, memoranda of association, articles, rules of companies, clubs, unions and other societies be included.

In other words categories (d) to (l) as listed by Ferguson in volume V, as his proposal for exclusion in the 1851 to 1900 period. Consideration should perhaps be given to excluding pamphlets of less than 5 pages or at any rate, excluding broadsides.

If this plan were adopted, it may pose problems for those libraries (including the National Library) which have a policy of not cataloguing some of the categories of material previously excluded, such as sale and exhibition catalogues, and programs. Maybe it would simply have to be accepted that some material, possibly a fair quantity, would inevitably be missed because of this situation.

I believe that the National Library would be interested in your views on an amended proposal for the *Addenda* 1851-1900 and its implications.

Prepared response by A. Walker

In responding to Mrs Fanning's excellent state-of-the-art paper, I can add nothing to the detailed information she has provided. I would therefore like to confine my remarks to discussing desiderata in retrospective national bibliography.

Pre-1784 Imprints

No one comprehensive work exists, but in the past this has been a field of great interest for individual bibliographers, book collectors and booksellers. Mrs Fanning has pointed to the range of bibliographies available, and many of these are detailed and contain bibliographical description of a high standard.

The compilation of an authoritative work for this period is not a great practical necessity, and therefore must be given a lower priority compared with making up the more obvious deficiencies in national bibliographical control of later periods.

1784-1900

This is the "Ferguson period", and is covered in greater detail for the early years.

The project to produce the *Addenda* to Ferguson has been undertaken by the National Library and, according to Mrs Fanning's description, the National Library has the project "well in hand", though it still "requires a good deal of further editorial work".

The proposed three volumes of *Addenda* will no doubt satisfy all but the most demanding users of information up to 1850, but the question of the scope of the *Addenda* for the later period might be discussed, and Mrs Fanning has addressed this particularly.

First, though, the inclusion of an *index* as part of the *Addenda* will be welcomed heartily by librarians, historians and other scholars, and should add greatly to the usefulness of Ferguson for research into the late nineteenth century. The plans for an index to authors' names (in various forms), editors, pseudonyms, titles (in various forms) and many other useful entry points seem exemplary, but I am intrigued by Mrs Fanning's reference to an index of "subjects, emphasizing Australian content". The compilation of a subject index to an existing bibliography which did not intend to have one when first compiled cannot be an easy task; I would be interested if Mrs Fanning, or a National Library representative, could give us more information about the type of subject index which is planned, and how it has been, is being or will be compiled.

This subject index is potentially of great importance. The existence of a good subject index to late nineteenth century publications would have a significant influence on Australian bibliographies of special subjects. Compilers of such retrospective bibliographies might need to cast their nets back only to 1901, rather than as far as 1851, which would be desirable at present. The prospect of covering such a long time span may well have daunted prospective subject bibliographers in the past.

Mrs Fanning has suggested that we direct our attention to the content of the *Addenda* for the 1851-1900 period, and I would like to comment on the categories of publication which she identifies as possible to omit or include:

1. All material recorded in Miller & Macartney

Mrs Fanning suggests that this may be excluded, and on practical grounds I must agree. Though some may feel uneasy, on the principle of comprehensive subject coverage, about the exclusion of such an important group of publications as literary works from the authoritative national bibliography, it is simply not a sensible extension of coverage to duplicate an existing large work of adequate bibliographical standard.

2. Parliamentary Papers

In suggesting their exclusion from the *Addenda,* one recognizes that parliamentary papers have been indexed by the Parliaments themselves, except for two states, and this meeting agreed yesterday to support Miss Miller's recommendation that those two states be encouraged to do so.

The adequacy of such indexing for all bibliographical purposes is another question.

3. Bills, Acts & Ordinances

These were also discussed yesterday, and the discussion included consideration of how appropriate it was for some of them to be included in the national bibliography, rather than being dealt with separately. On practical grounds, as with parliamentary papers, the *Addenda* to Ferguson does not seem to be the right place for them.

This raises the whole question of whether it is desirable to have a separate retrospective national bibliography of government publications. Dr Cope and Miss Miller, I think, might be in favour of it, while Mrs Fanning and I would not be (or, at any rate, I would still need to be convinced) but this is not a matter to be decided by show of hands, though it must be something to be considered by the National Library as it goes about its proper task of compilation, arrangement, and presentation of the components of the Retrospective National Bibliography.

4. Newspapers, Serials, Annual reports

I agree with Mrs Fanning that these must be excluded from the *Addenda.*

As Mr Stockdale pointed out yesterday, the union catalogues, through the high quality of their entries, provide something close to national bibliographical control of serials. There may still be a place, however, for a national retrospective listing of serials. They are, after all, hidden in the union catalogues, mixed up with all the overseas entries. I can see the value to researchers of an historical list, or lists of Australian periodicals, with some subject access, or at least subject groupings, or descriptions of content. One such list has recently been produced - Lurline Stuart's bibliography of nineteenth century Australian periodicals with literary content (one might be misled by the title into thinking it was comprehensive for nineteenth century periodicals, which it is not). Such a serials list would also be useful as a precursor to a general periodical index up to 1945, which Mrs Fanning has suggested.

5. Inclusions

The categories excluded by Ferguson which Mrs Fanning would include in the *Addenda* are all desirable additions: there seems no good reason for omitting literary works not already listed in Miller and Macartney, works on law, science, medicine and technology, and school books.

The group which is likely to give the most trouble is programs, sales catalogues, land sales pamphlets, memoranda of association, rules of societies, etc. One can only say if the existence of these is known, please let us have them in. If there are to be addenda to the *Addenda*, then we will probably find they are largely taken up with listing newly discovered or newly described items of this type.

Retrospective National Bibliography 1901-1950 (RNB)

The completion of the national bibliography for this period is clearly the National Library's job. The National Library has accepted the responsibility and has announced plans a number of times for doing the job. The history of these plans is interestingly described in Mrs Fanning's paper. The plans have varied as the form of *ANB* has varied, i.e. it is clearly seen by the National Library as a backward extension of the current national bibliography.

Mrs Fanning has argued that it is unreasonable to impose a change of plan on the National Library at this stage - and if this means varying the content, adding to the scope, or even excluding a large group (such as official publications), I agree. I wonder, though, whether it is too late to continue discussing format and arrangement.

Is publication of RNB in the present format and arrangement of *ANB* desirable, or necessary? What is the current format of *ANB?* - or what will it be during the next decade? We are moving away from the printed bibliography to microfiche and on-line formats, which have quite different design requirements and which make concepts of arrangement less important. Should we then be thinking of the primary form of RNB as its microfiche or on-line manifestation and design it accordingly? If some may be concerned that this will make the product less accessible to poorer libraries, consider what the printed form of RNB would be like: 50,000-odd entries, in classified sequence, with two substantial indexes, would have to be produced in many volumes, and if realistically priced, sold for many hundreds if not thousands of dollars. RNB on COM could be much cheaper, and scarcely less convenient.

Conclusion

All tasks in the field of retrospective bibliography are, by definition, finite.

Some, because of their size or complexity, can only be done by a particular institution - in the case of the projects discussed, almost always by the National Library of Australia. This applies to the Ferguson *Addenda*, RNB for 1901-50 (and, if it were to be done separately, the retrospective national bibliography of official publications).

The smaller, simpler finite tasks contributing to the retrospective national bibliography might be taken on by other bodies, even individuals. As Mr Borchardt pointed out yesterday, we are fortunate at the moment in having an appropriate funding body interested in sponsoring work in this field, which we might approach: the Bicentennial History Project's Working Party on Bibliography.

Projects which might be referred to the Bicentennial History Project are:

1. A general periodical index to 1945, as suggested by Mrs Fanning, and (as a possible precursor to this)
2. An historical list or lists or Australian periodicals, with some subject access, or at least subject groupings, or descriptions of contents.

Others may have additional suggestions.

For the mainstream, the only recommendation I can suggest is on the pious side, and would go along the lines that AACOBS emphasize to the National Library of Australia the great importance of completing the *Addenda* to Ferguson and RNB 1901-50 and encourage and support that institution in its efforts to do so.

General discussion

The discussion opened with questions about the index to the RNB and on the format and arrangement of the bibliography. P. Fanning informed the Conference that although work was progressing on the index for the Ferguson *Addenda* to 1850 along the lines of the index to the existing volumes, no work had commenced on the index to volumes 5 to 7. Commenting on the format of the RNB, I. Royal drew attention to page 169 in the paper which pointed to the production of a descriptive list in the first instance, followed by a subject arrangement. He also advised that the descriptive list might be produced in COM form although this possibility, and that of using WLN to provide on-line access, were still under consideration by the National Library.

Replying to a query from J. Conochie on the likely cost of the RNB if it were published in book form, I. Royal stated that to date the National Library had only been thinking of making the descriptive list available in COM form. This had not been costed partly because of the new dimension which the WLN software had brought to bear on the issue. P. Fanning pointed out that the descriptive list was only regarded as a preliminary edition; publication in a final form would be considered and there were numerous possibilities with ABN and WLN.

M. Cameron expressed her concern at the possibility of the final RNB only being available in COM form or on-line. She stressed that it was one bibliographical tool which definitely should be available to users in book form.

A. Miller returned to the question of the indexes to RNB and queried whether they would be along the lines of the current indexes to *ANB*. In particular, she stressed the advantages of keeping a similar arrangement for official publications to that provided in *AGP* for the inclusion of history notes for issuing bodies. Participants noted her preference for a separate listing of official publications arranged by jurisdiction and issuing bodies although she agreed that there were more pressing priorities. However, inclusion of official publications in the *Addenda* and in the 1850-1900 volumes must be recognized as being very important.

In reply, P. Fanning commented that the compilation of administrative arrangements of Commonwealth government departments was the responsibility of the Australian Archives; in addition there was also the problem of that structure at state levels. As far as the exclusion of official publications from the 1851-1900 segment was concerned,it was pointed out that this was a difficult decision but it needed remembering that one did have alternative sources of access with parliamentary publications.

J. Hine expressed concern about the exclusion of material consisting of less than 5 pages and suggested that a better criterion be adopted e.g. such material be included if any library has seen fit to catalogue them. While P. Fanning agreed in principle with these comments, she pointed out that the volume of material produced would create an enormous problem.

D.H. Borchardt expressed the view that if the *RNB* were to be selective then it would not be a national bibliography. He argued that more effort would be required in subject bibliography if the compilers of the *RNB* were not attempting a comprehensive coverage.

J. Scrivener agreed with the National Library's decision to follow Ferguson and to exclude certain classes of ephemera. He suggested one solution would be to follow the Harvester Press example, i.e. to attempt to collect the material, microfilm it and make it available to those who want it. W. Pinson supported this approach and stressed the importance of maintaining some form of record for ephemera. Referring to the priorities for the RNB and the Ferguson *Addenda*,J. Scrivener suggested that scholars would probably prefer efforts to be directed towards the completion of the RNB.

P. Fanning pointed out that,although she agreed with these sentiments,the RNB was still at the compilation stage while the first volume of the Ferguson *Addenda* had reached the printing stage. She pointed out that the two projects had been progressing simultaneously and that the National Library had assembled approximately 20,000 entries for the RNB and expects the total to accumulate to at least twice that amount. The Ferguson *Addenda* to 1850 has approximately 1760 entries and the addenda to volumes 5-7 will contain five to six thousand entries. There is already some evidence that many of these entries were simply variant editions which would be mainly of interest to bibliographers.

J. McQueen referred to the recommendation in the paper concerning a retrospective periodical index and pointed out that this was the type of project which could be undertaken on a co-operative basis. She urged the

AACOBS Working Party on Bibliography to give serious consideration to this proposal.

S. Routh supported the idea of producing an index for pre 1945 periodicals and referred to a number of attempts to index select nineteenth century literary periodicals. He queried whether more progress would be made with a series of interlocking projects of this type than with one comprehensive index. It was agreed that the AACOBS Working Party on Bibliography should undertake a feasibility study on an index to pre-1945 Australian periodicals.

The difficulties of ensuring quality control in a project which involved large numbers of people were raised by M. Cameron. The question of duplication of effort was also discussed and participants were reminded of the existence of the Register of Bibliographies in Progress which was maintained at La Trobe University Library. R. Choate suggested that the repetition occurred not so much with the same indexes being prepared but with the same journal being examined for different purposes.

In response to a question concerning the inclusion of local history publications, P. Fanning informed the Conference that RNB was being compiled from the National Library's catalogues and NUCOM, and that the holdings of those libraries which contribute to NUCOM will therefore be included. Expanding on these comments, I. Royal pointed out that the National Library had not considered receiving contributed entries from local libraries for the RNB. This method had been used for the Ferguson *Addenda*, however, and he agreed that the National Library will consider contacting local libraries about the matter at the appropriate time.

189

SESSION 6

RETROSPECTIVE NATIONAL BIBLIOGRAPHY

Paper by P. Fanning - Former Director, Australian National Humanities Library, National Library of Australia

Prepared response by A. Walker - Social Sciences and Humanities Librarian, University of New South Wales Libraries

Chairman of Session - J. Conochie, Principal Librarian, CSIRO, Melbourne

Principal participants in General discussion

D.H. Borchardt - Chief Librarian, La Trobe University

M. Cameron - Chief Librarian, Deakin University

R. Choate - Senior Reference Librarian, La Trobe University

J. Hine - Head Cataloguer, State Library of New South Wales

J. McQueen - Principal Librarian, Bibliography, National Library of Australia

A. Miller - Government Publications Librarian, La Trobe University

W. Pinson - Readers Services Librarian, Warrnambool Institute of Advanced Education

I. Royal - Chief Cataloguer, ANB, National Library of Australia

S. Routh - Senior Principal Librarian, Reference Services, University of Queensland

J. Scrivener - University Librarian, University of Tasmania

AUSTRALIAN SUBJECT BIBLIOGRAPHY

D. H. Borchardt

This is the last in the series of papers which the AACOBS Working Party on Bibliography commissioned for this Conference. The theme of the Conference is bibliographical services with particular reference to the immediate future. Nevertheless, and quite properly, all speakers have taken good care to ensure that their contribution is properly rooted in the past. The arrangement of the papers reflects, broadly speaking, a deliberate progression from the general to the particular; in addition, there is a shift of emphasis from institutional achievement to personal contributions and involvement. If there is a binding concept that links all of these papers and gives them at least a unifying trait, it is that directly or indirectly they are concerned with the bibliographical infrastructure of Australian studies. While it should never be forgotten that Australian achievement in national bibliographic control is highly creditable by international standards, this achievement tends to be seen wholly in the institutional setting of the *Australian national bibliography* (ANB) and its antecedents. Yet such and other bibliographic enterprises are created by real live people, by persons with vision and drive. Institutions and committees may and often do provide the organisational background and the conditions that ensure viability and continuity - they also tend to quash enterprise and progress.

Though librarians are professionally dedicated to preserve peace and to show no political bias it is equally part of their credo to advocate a totalitarian mode. That mode is in fact the solid substance of every librarian's dream. Universal bibliographic control may not be what every political dictator aims at the first day he comes to power but it is unquestionably one of the principal means for the intellectual management of the masses. Yet, for very different reasons, Universal Bibliographic Control (UBC) is writ large on the banner of the International Federation of Library Associations and Institutions (IFLA) and has been given financial support by UNESCO. The objective has been recognised as a long term one, for practical rather than ideological reasons: "To develop a world wide system for the control and exchange of bibliographical information, in order to make universally and promptly available, in a form which is internationally acceptable, bibliographic information on publications issued in all countries".[1] Like all totalitarian modes, there is something at once revolting and somewhat infantile about UBC - but this assertion is not intended to belittle the intrinsic heroism of the proponents of UBC, nor to suggest that I do not subscribe to it as a librarian or even as a literate citizen. To the extent that UBC has undeniably administrative virtues, it cannot fail to attract the support of every literate person. It is, let us remember, perfectly human to desire to know all or at least to have the means of knowing all.

It remains perhaps open to question whether all is worth knowing and, more importantly, whether all can be known. There are those, of course, who have no doubts. To them, the totalitarian approach provides the sole guarantee that only through UBC can we ensure that none is disadvantaged, that value judgements imposed at ground level do not prevent grass roots from bringing forth tender blades which could nourish a

191

little lamb. I do respect that view, and it is intellectually defensible as well as having the merit of being politically acceptable in this day and age. There is little evidence, alas, that this is practicable. However much we try, absolute UBC seems to be as far away as ever; indeed it may well be unattainable - like goodness and beauty. Nonetheless, that is no reason for not trying.

There exist other grounds for criticism, based on practical rather than theoretical issues. Indeed, it is in practical terms that UNESCO and IFLA have recognised "that each country is best qualified to identify and record the publications of its national authors"[2] and we are therefore well justified in limiting the examination of the implications of UBC to Australia. The point I want to make here is that a national bibliography cannot be all things to all men unless the cost of trying to achieve this is totally discounted. For the present, given the limitations both in manpower resources and in technical sophistication under which the *ANB* is being compiled, it cannot be all things to all men. I would go further, even, and claim that from an epistemological point, it is unlikely that all men can ever be satisfied by the *ANB*, however wonderful the computer that ensures its arrangement and index. I for one do not see in this shortcoming a good reason for withdrawing my admiration for the high quality the *ANB* has reached.

The recognition of such a shortcoming prompts me, however, to look more carefully at supplementary or complementary bibliographical services. Some of these have already been discussed by others during this Conference. The emphasis has so far remained predominantly within the large domain of universal control and to this end they have been conceived on a grand scale. Yet, as the collection of *Twelve essays*[3] shows, there are many scholars - and I look upon each of the authors of those essays as representing a whole category of scholarship - whose primary interest cannot be met by the type of universal bibliography that we can construct economically today.

In the first place, the individual scholar has a serious interest only in his own field. He cares little for other disciplines and to present him with a complete set of the *ANB* is likely to hinder rather than to help him. Secondly he is bound to want a much wider range of references than are represented by the monograph literature on the one hand, or by the indexes to journals of which Denis Abbott has presented an overview in his paper at this Conference. Even the computer-based data banks of references do not always meet the needs of all scholars. There are quite obvious shortcomings, caused by financial restrictions (e.g. inadequacy of length of data file) or by the construction of the data bank itself (basis of selection, structure of thesaurus, etc.).

It appears to be insufficiently understood that the bibliographic infrastructure of scholarship cannot readily be cast into a rigid mould. The needs of every scholar and the requirements for every piece of research differ, and often they differ widely, even if there are two fundamental assumptions common to the process of citation: one is the real or felt need to identify the source of authority, the other is the understandable preference for an avoidance of repetition. Such considerations inevitably lead us to the conclusion that in general, every scholar must construct his own bibliography to support his research - and none would deny this.

Nevertheless, it is desirable and feasible to prepare literature control systems which will at least make it considerably easier for specialist scholars to identify and select the existing contributions to their field of interest. Eleven of the twelve essays on Australian subject bibliography are specifically concerned with the many possibilities of improving the control of literature in well defined fields. Those are Australian literature, children's literature, the literature for the study of history other than Australian themes, the literature of Australian politics, economics, education, legal studies and law, the literature of Australian geography, agriculture and wild life.

Some of the contributors to the *Twelve essays* made a conscious effort to identify the meaning of the term "Australian". In particular K.A.R. Horn. R.G. Freestone, F.G. Davidson, and H.M. Russell & G.R.T. Levick saw fit to ensure that readers would know what was meant by "Australian music", "Australian geography", etc., and we are all beholden to them for having paid attention to this point. It is rather relevant in this context because it explains indirectly why there are some Australian centred bibliographies which are not even viable. For instance, when I first searched the Australian bibliographic scene, in 1962, I noted a bibliography of Australian mathematical writing. Then as now, it seems a rather misguided effort unless it be seen as an index to a biographical exercise primarily designed to show the cumulative output of members of the Australian Mathematical Society. We have for many (and I hope predominantly good) reasons refrained until now from staking claims for all sorts of inventions which though they have found application in this country, had their origins elsewhere - the reverse practice appears to be all too often adopted in countries with a hypersensitive notion of their national importance. "Australian" in the context of literary output and scholarly achievement can therefore be relied upon to mean what it says in the words of K.A.R. Horn apropos Australian music; "written by Australians; written about Australian music or musicians; performed by Australians; and published in Australia."[4] It is of course a basic axiom of the bibliographer's work that he should commence with the proper identification of the scope of any literature survey, and the choice of an unsuitable or impracticable field will lead him into considerable difficulties and may even vitiate the whole effort. To spell this out in practical terms, it implies there is no prospect of compiling a meaningful bibliography of Australian chemistry, or physics or logic. In none of these topics can a specifically Australian element be identified.

It is not appropriate in this context, nor should it be necessary here, to present a critique of the essentials of the bibliographer's art. This has been done in many other and more suitable places. Yet two characteristics of bibliographers may be worth stressing because these follow (or precede?) the comments made above. If I were to select the two criteria which seem most essential in the make-up of a bibliographer, they are self-discipline and discernment. Discernment above all because on the ability to discriminate rests surely the whole art of bibliographic compilation. Self-discipline is another most desirable characteristic in any man or woman, but it has a particular meaning in this context; to stray from the chosen and defined bibliographic field tends to lead to disaster.

By what criteria can or should we then identify the Australian subject fields which require the most urgent attention by bibliographers? This question, in spite of its obvious attraction as leading potentially to an answer that might provide a guide and map for future reference, contains unfortunately a nonsense element already suggested in some comments made earlier. Much of the really successful and excellent bibliographic work has sprung from a genuine need of subject specialists who require an extensive literature survey of their field in order to be able to make progress with their research. Yet there exist also some outstanding examples of bibliographic work conceived as such and executed as a scholarly research project in its own right - which only proves the point I have been trying to make for many years in academia where ninety nine per cent of the inhabitants continue to look upon bibliography and bibliographical studies as in every respect inferior and on a par with basket weaving or worse. It would be easy enough to treat the ignorant with the contempt they deserve, but without financial support there is little likelihood that bibliographical studies will flourish. As if to point the bone, the information leaflet 'Advice to applicants' accompanying ARGC application forms makes it known beyond reasonable doubt that,

> Assessors in most fields tend not to give a high rating to data compilation or the development of research aids and tools (including computer programs) unless it can be shown that such exercises are important for work of a more problem-solving sort. The production of a bibliography, whether annotated or not, may involve a painstaking search, judgment based, on expertise in some field of knowledge and some measure of originality. However such a project is unlikely to receive assessors' ratings to make it sufficiently competitive except when it can be seen that the resultant bibliography will be of significant value to research workers and not just to students and established scholars seeking some guidance in the course of their general study in the area.

With bibliography thus relegated by Australia's prime authority on what constitutes research to an inferior place among the fields of scholarship, it is scarcely surprising that few persons are attracted to it. Even bibliographers have to live, and when their scholarly attainments cannot attract financial support their skill and learning have to be exercised as a secondary occupation after the demands of their bread winning posts have been satisfied. I can speak without personal involvement because I have had ARGC support for two bibliographic projects; nevertheless I deplore the general attitude of that particular research evaluation tribunal because the statement quoted from the guidelines has prevented many serious projects from being submitted.

There can be no doubt that even if the ARGC took a more realistic view of bibliography as a proper field of research and as a scholarly activity, there would be serious problems in the evaluation of proposals seeking financial support. Yet these problems would scarcely be greater in the area of bibliography than in any other field with which the ARGC manfully grapples and reaches decisions.

The task of identifying the manifold areas in the culture and civilisation of our country which deserve or need an assessment of the pertinent literature has been made a great deal easier by the current awareness of our historical setting. In about eight years from now the Australian nation will be celebrating the bicentenary of European settlement on this continent; an event which, however, it may be viewed in retrospect, provides a suitable stimulus for an evaluation of our achievements. These fall quite obviously into three broad categories: there are the physical changes that have been wrought upon this continent in that same period, and the technology that made such changes possible; there are socio-political achievements reflected by numbers of people, by forms of government, by the social and economic patterns created during these two hundred years; and there is, lastly, the perception of the flux of time, the awareness of what is properly Australian in our achievements, good or bad, and the standard by which such judgement is made - in sum the cultural life and the art forms in which it is expressed.

However this assessment and evaluation may be conceived and implemented, it will inevitably depend on the availability of written records so ordered that those who are involved in the painting of the huge canvas can have relatively easy access to factual data, to mirrors of events, to the constant but often slow changes in our visions and perceptions of this country. This is what literature surveys are about, this is the real objective of subject bibliographies.

I have used much time and space to say once more what I have been preaching for many years, and I have deliberately postponed what many readers may have expected me to do from the beginning, viz. to produce a list of topics which require bibliographic treatment. I am, however, somewhat reluctant to do so for the simple reason that there can be no firm prescription let alone a detailed enumeration. More importantly, no single person can produce such a list. During the past thirty years or more subject bibliography has been one of my principal interests but it is only natural that my own contributions to the field have been few and modest. Equally naturally I freely acknowledge my debt to many friends and colleagues whose suggestions have helped me formulate my ideas on Australian subject bibliography. Any list is therefore inevitably the product of the views of many others or based on the example of fellow workers. It would be invidious to mention only a few and impossible to mention all, but I must acknowledge particularly the influence and the models set by men like the late E. Morris Miller, and by Brian Gandevia, Frank Crawley and Russell Cope. Younger scholars whom I may have inspired at some stage have already given evidence of their ability to carry on and will use the torch of bibliography to throw light on some dark corners of Australian documents and writings; these include Ann Miller, Julie Marshall, Jo Monie, John Thawley and several others. Such a list will inevitably be the outcome of discussions I have had with them as well as of the many suggestions made directly or indirectly in the *Twelve essays*; obviously it must also show awareness of work in progress, some record of which is being maintained by the AACOBS Working Party on Bibliography.

If after these lengthy preliminaries I now reluctantly proceed to come to grips with the hard core of the assignment set by the AACOBS Working Party, it may surprise many that the list is relatively short. There are two reasons for this. One is the obvious one that a list of suggestions for bibliographic topics cannot contain more than a broad description of areas; the other is that while there is no theoretical limit to the variations on so large a theme, in practical terms every specific topic lends itself to many different approaches, to a multitude of limitations and expansions, and so forth, so that in the hands of different bibliographers many topics will lead to almost as many bibliographies as there are compilers.

Assuming that there can be no serious disagreement with the interpretation of Australian as "related directly to Australia" (cf. my comment on Ken Horn's survey of the bibliographical services related to music in Australia), we can perhaps take the broad areas of recorded knowledge and note that the following topics are perhaps more urgently in need of literature surveys than many others:

Literature on Australian geography - descriptive, historical, regional, human, physical, etc.

Literature of Australian fauna and flora - though some noteworthy work has been done, a list of species still to be covered would fill a small book; an army of bibliographers could well be employed in this field.

Literature on Australian history, divided by period, region, locality groups, individuals (biography).

Literature of Australian economic and social conditions - to name but a few: prices and wages, working conditions, business, finance, agrobusiness and other special aspects.

Literature on Australian literature - in spite of several excellent surveys and a few good and far too many bad bibliographies of individual authors, there are many literary figures who deserve to be the subject of a decent bibliographical study; there exist no respectable bibliographies of Australian poetry, drama or theatre.

Literature of technology in Australia - a small start has been made with pioneer technology and manufacturing, but the field is wide open for scholars interested in specific topics, e.g. building materials, civil and mechanical engineering, transport, potteries and clay industries, printing, marine engineering and ship building.

Literature of service industries in Australia - army, navy, airforce, church; shipping, transport, gas and electricity; communications.

Literature of fine arts and music in Australia - while music is now being looked after a little better through the establishment of the Australia Music Centre in Sydney, the fine arts are making slow progress. A feasibility study is under way for the establishment of an Art Information Centre in Melbourne and a number of monographs on Australian painters, sculptors and potters have appeared during the past two decades; there persists a lack of literature surveys and of bibliographies on the whole field, on specific aspects of it and on individual artists. A particuler problem in this context is that a good deal of art criticism appears in the leading representatives of the daily press, but few bibliographers appear to have the gut or the stamina to tackle this.

Literature of Australian primary industries - wool, meat, mining incl. oil.

Literature of Australian sport and leisure pastimes - some feeble efforts have been made, but as this field attracts brawn rather than brains there is perhaps little hope for improvement in bibliographical services.

Literature of the professions in Australia - we don't even have a quality bibliography of Australian librarianship.

Literature of government administration in Australia - government departments, parliamentary papers, local government documents - a difficult field but offering plenty of scope for the person with imagination; alas a lot of ground work will have to be done first and some of this goes far beyond bibliography.

Besides the hundreds of topics hidden behind this modest list, there is much to be done on the bibliography of literary forms, e.g. newspaper indexes, magazine lists, pamphlets.

With all that work before us, it is time we adjourn this Conference and gird our loins, sharpen our quill pens - and get on with the job. Indeed, but let us not rush. Before anyone starts out on a bibliographic enterprise, some planning must precede. A bibliography of any substance is a major task and should not be undertaken lightly. Two basic considerations will have to be resolved quite early in the piece: what kind of bibliography? and to what purpose? It is not necessary to restate and comment on the prime categories of bibliographies in this context; they can be found in any textbook and will be clearly in the mind of every reader. Besides, I have expostulated on this theme on several occasions and in particular before the 18th Biennial Conference of the LAA.[5]

However, I believe it to be worth reiterating that those who engage in a bibliographical enterprise, that is to have scholarly significance, must ensure from the beginning to the end that the work is set into its proper context. An enumerative bibliography, and in particular one which has the alphabet as its sole ordinating guide, is a poor and useless exercise. It has no raison d'être - can there be worse? It is essential that a subject bibliography be genuinely related to the subject of which it deals. This may sound tautologous - alas, it is a practical rule which many bibliographers have failed to observe.

In order to achieve this obviously desirable end: that a subject bibliography is anchored firmly and unambiguously in its subject context, three approaches are open to us. Before describing these, one brief preliminary remark is required, based on long experience as an advisor on subject bibliographies and teacher. Every bibliography should be preceded by a brief statement setting out its purpose, the criteria for the selection of references and preferably the public for whom it is designed. This may seem obvious to most who are present at this Conference - it is far from obvious to most who compile subject bibliographies. Even in cases where a person is merely bent upon a literature survey of his own research field for his own benefit, such a prefatory statement is most desirable; if it does nothing else, at least it obliges the compiler to determine, for his own guidance, the limits within which he has set or is setting his work.

There are, as I have claimed, three general forms through which the subject relevance of a bibliography can be elucidated. One is the simple device of describing the subject and its place in the world of recorded knowledge in an introductory essay and to divide the bibliography into sections which reflect that place, i.e. the several constituent fields of the subject, its relationship with other areas of knowledge, and so forth.

Another form of presentation is to arrange all citations in some meaningful fashion - chronologically or by constituent fields of the whole subject under investigation, by language if that is relevant, etc. - and to provide an adequate annotation for every citation. This second form leads to all sorts of problems, but it can at least be said that the user of such a bibliography would be in no doubt about the significance and relevance of any item listed.

A frequently used cross-breed of the first and second form is the kind of bibliography which sports a general introduction outlining the subject field followed by broad divisions of the subject into subfields again briefly introduced by a short note, and with entries, however they be arranged, qualified either by a few critical words or some symbolism indicating intellectual level, likely readership or some other sort of classification.

To cite at least two examples, we find the first form represented in the *Harvard guide to American history*[6] while the second example is best represented by Monie & Wise's *Social policy and its administration*.[7] The relative merit of the two approaches is self evident.

A third form of approach is the bibliographical essay. This has not been a popular form hitherto in Australia but it is becoming a little less rare than it used to be. Its antecedents lie in Europe rather than in North America and rest, it seems, on the concept that a literature survey of any subject should primarily concern itself with the subject and examine how it is reflected in the literature. Excellent examples of this form can be found regularly in the great scholarly journals (e.g. *Revue d'histoire*, *Historische Zeitschrift*, in the field of history, or *Petermann's Geographische Mitteilungen* in the field of geography).

In her endeavours to examine the history and politics of Victoria up to 1939, Jo Monie has also adopted this form, dividing the fields into appropriate subfields, pointing up their essential characteristics and discussing how these have been treated by various authors. I suppose it would be fair to add that I, too, have tried this form in *Australian bibliography*[8] and elsewhere. Not surprisingly, therefore, I find it acceptable and useful, but I would not like it to be thought that it is the one and only form to be used to close the large gap in Australian subject bibliography. Such literature surveys fall clearly into the fields of scholarly activity which the ARGC should sponsor and it will not do to write them off as being just aids "to students and established scholars seeking more guidance in the course of their general study in the area". After more than 30 years of close contact with "established scholars" and having been professionally involved with their research, I am unable to share the ARGC's views that the average researcher in this country proceeds as systematically as he might in the literature surveys that ought to accompany his laboratory activities. Nor should it be believed that it is that much better in other countries or that this sad failure is restricted to either the arts or the science branch of learning. Scholarship is, after all, a way of life and its methods and rules of procedures follow universal axioms.

It is of course presumptuous to assume that all research produces original contributions to knowledge. The frontiers of our domain, the limits of our mastery over nature, are neither straight lines nor concentric circles. They are irregular and transcend many planes. It is the task of the creative bibliographer to help measure them - and none can deny that this requires an understanding of the lines of demarcation, a methodical approach and insight into relationships.

This perception of bibliography is reinforced by an appreciation of the growth of knowledge itself. Today few fields of research fall neatly into the classical domains of scholarship - though historians of scholarship will hasten to point out that there have been few periods in which scholarship has persisted for long in being restrained by traditional boundaries or, more precisely, by fences real or imaginary that forced research activities back upon the exhausted soil. We speak a lot today of the growth of science (though in reality we mean and should speak of knowledge in general) and claim arrogantly that our invention of interdisciplinary research is contributing to the advances made by 20th century man. In fact, interdisciplinary studies go back to the old Greeks and have been known and practised among Arab and Indian scholars centuries ago.

Novelty comes in when scholars (including bibliographers) straddle the boundaries of subject fields and devise a means of compiling, be it manually or by machine, a literature survey that brings to the fore a field hitherto partly submerged in two or more other subject areas. The importance of this kind of bibliographic research is rarely appreciated until it has been completed and presented in usable form. Consequently it will attract financial support only if funding organisations are sufficiently imaginative to be able to tune in with the bibliographer.

If there are conclusions to be drawn from these observations, I should like to think that they are, first of all, an acknowledgement of the intrinsic value of the bibliographer's art; secondly, that of the many forms of bibliography, the interpretative subject literature survey which throws light upon new fields of research, is an indispensable adjunct, if indeed not an essential preliminary activity, without which progress cannot be made in any field of knowledge; and thirdly that the application of these theoretical considerations to the broad areas of Australian studies briefly outlined above is long overdue and must be tackled systematically if it is to lead to better foundations for Australian studies. The stimulus which the bicentenary celebrations will provide for historians during the next six to seven years, should also stir Australian bibliographers into action.

References

1. UNESCO. General information programme. *Guidelines for the national bibliographic agency and the national bibliography*, prepared by the IFLA International Office for UBC, Paris, 1979. (PGI/79/WS/18)

2. *Ibid.* p.1.

3. Borchardt, D.H. ed. *Twelve essays on Australian subject bibliography.* Canberra, National Library of Australia, 1980. (Development of resource sharing networks. Networks study, no.12).

4. Horn, K.A.R. 'Gaps in Australian music bibliography'. In Borchardt, D.H. ed. *Twelve essays on Australian subject bibliography.* Canberra, National Library of Australia, 1980, pp.27-30.

5. Borchardt, D.H. 'Bibliography in Australia: a third assay and a note on principles'. In Library Association of Australia. Conference, 18th, Melbourne, 1975. *Proceedings.* Melbourne, 1976, pp.347-355.

6. *Harvard guide to American history.* Revised edn edited by Frank Freidel. Cambridge, Mass., Belknap Press of Harvard University Press, 1974. 2 vols

7. Monie, J. and Wise, A. *Social policy and its administration; a survey of the Australian literature 1950-1975.* Rushcutters Bay, N.S.W., Pergamon Press, 1977.

8. Borchardt, D.H. *Australian bibliography; a guide to printed sources of information.* 3rd edn Rushcutters Bay, N.S.W., Pergamon Press, 1976.

Introductory remarks by D.H. Borchardt

There was a nice series of films produced by the BBC about the Roman Empire - not the Holy one - and the Caesers who made it. Tiberius figured largely and I imagine most of you think he was a pretty nasty piece of work. I do not know that he was - it did not come out very clearly. He was a man who thought and who had scruples over some things. When he wanted to achieve something he went ahead even if not always in a straight and democratic manner. He lived in fear and trembling of his mother as do many of us and while he was cogitating over how to do something which he was anxious to do neatly his mother said to him - "You should have been a librarian". To his query "Why?" she replied "because you have such a classifactory mind". Tiberius as a librarian is something we would all wish to be - he lived long if perhaps not very happily.

There is not much I wish to add to what is in my paper. I was asked to say something about gaps in Australian subject bibliography - at the time of writing I found that very difficult. I would find that very easy now by simply taking together all the suggestions which have come up here and in many ways they would have filled this paper much better. But there are basic considerations which one should not leave out. My mind shudders, being of an older generation, when I hear this glib talk about computers and on-line services taking charge of bibliography. I am convinced it is not that simple. A computer, however wonderful, for the time being will only spew out what you put in. At the very best it can give back to you the data which have been entered and which it can re-assemble in a variety of ways - it is this variety in the end which will lead to new findings but it is always dependent upon the mind of man to interpret the new assembly.

There is one comment I tried to make, not very successfully, in the last session of this Conference. Thinking of any bibliography, and in particular of a national union catalogue which in a way is a bibliography, one must think first of all about the person for whom it is designed. Nobody has given much consideration to this. We could probably cover the Retrospective National Bibliography better by not producing a retrospective national bibliography but by farming out a vast number of special subject lists which may have some overlap but which would really cover the ground equally well. These would then be of some use to those for whom they are destined. I am aware that there are practical reasons for cutting out all sorts of ephemera - I have doubts about this and it makes me uneasy. I hope, for example, somebody will cover broadsheets and pamphlets under five pages which have appeared between 1900-1914. They are very important and reflect more than anything else the tempo of the nation at a time when it was about to be tested in a different way. To exclude documents because of their size does not make sense - it is totally illogical. The one document which changed the history of the world and which contains only four pages was the Columbus letter of 1493 - by the National Library's ruling, which is supported by many, this would be excluded from the National Library's bibliography. To be selective and to pass judgement on one's selection is equally difficult. Totalitarian approaches, therefore, make life easier and I have pointed out in my paper that this is something to which librarians appear to be dedicated.

201

Prepared response by V. Hankel

We have reached the last course of a long and, I hope, satisfying meal. And it is most appropriate that this last course has been provided by Dietrich Borchardt, who is in so many ways the giver of the feast. At the end of such a banquet a few of us may be somnolent, some dyspeptic, some longing for the port to appear. Personally, I have to confess that Mr Borchardt's contribution to the cuisine has left me in a madly metaphorical mood, in the eupeptic euphoria one should feel when the last, good, wine-supported dish arrives. I know this is wrong of me. Bibliography is a serious---perhaps too often a solemn---subject. We have all eaten this last dish---we have read Mr Borchardt's paper---and I'd like to fill a digestive pause before Grace with a purely personal appreciation.

Mr Borchardt began his paper by painting a still-life of the bibliographer as a tender and fragile plant wilting beneath the glare of academic misunderstanding and the lack of financial rain. Because of the aridity of the environment only a few tough old vegetables are able to survive in the bibliographic field. Seedlings are few, and ill-nourished. Later we find that this initial image is illusory, for after some horticultural and artistic quick-changes we eventually see the bibliographer as a boundary-rider, as tough as Saltbush Bill and Clancy of the Overflow, or at least this is how I saw him.

Mr Borchardt developed his argument along these lines:
Bibliographic services in Australia have been created by individuals, rather than by the institutions which commonly take the credit.

Universal Bibliographic Control can be a political instrument; it is also an ideal. Such control is not really practicable.

There are virtues in national bibliographic effort to be set against the universal ideal, as evidenced by the *Twelve essays on Australian subject bibliography*.

The bibliographical interests of individual scholars require categorical and intensive bibliographies rather than grand and extensive works. But research is so individual that, to identify sources and avoid repetition, each scholar really needs to construct his own bibliography. However, bibliographers can and should construct systems to aid scholars.

The bibliographer, to be useful, must define his field, and must discipline himself to stay within its limits. Self-discipline and discernment are essential to the bibliographer.

Some topics do not lend themselves to a specifically Australian treatment. The identification and filling of gaps in Australian subject bibliography are unfortunately dependent on financial support from ignorant authorities, who do not understand what a useful, rare and fragile plant is the true bibliographer. Consequently, few seedlings become established in the dismal fields of bibliography.

Much cash and credit depend on the understanding--or ignorance---of ARGC.

The glare of publicity for the approaching bicentenary celebrations of European settlement in Australia should make easier the task of identifying bibliographical gaps in our civilization and culture. If this is so, one might expect additional impetus from the two approaching state sesquicentenaries.

So that"huge canvas" of Australian recorded history may be painted, bibliographers must stop being tender plants and concentrate on being blobs of paint on a mighty palate. This chromatic existence "is the real objective of subject bibliographies".

The definition of subject areas requiring bibliographic treatment is very difficult because "there can be no firm prescription let alone a detailed enumeration".

And so we come to Mr Borchardt's short list of subjects. Its shortness is because bibliographical description must deal with broad fields, which will be cultivated according to the individual tastes of the bibliographical gardeners. (At this stage I began to feel that, as Mr Borchardt's concern is Australian, his "broad fields" are really paddocks, in our pastoral sense. And as a mere boundary rider, daunted by distance and vastness, seeing "the vision splendid of the inky plains extended"---I felt very sorry for my horses).

Next, Mr Borchardt pointed out "the land of sweeping plains" over which we must toil. Then he ordered us to gird our loins, which always makes me think of a middle-aged Mum adjusting her girdle in public. After this he urged us to get on with the job, and not to make haste.

We were than reminded that subject definition, not an alphabetic or enumerative approach, must govern our efforts. This refusal to stray from sunburnt paddocks into green pastures "over the range" prompted Mr Borchardt to give some practical advice to would-be bibliographical boundary riders. He warns them, in short, to keep to their fences. We boundary riders are then urged to survey our stations, to get a clear idea of the constituent paddocks, and to use three ways of telling our literary bosses about these paddocks, as a good boundary rider should be able to do. We can describe the subject and its place in the world of knowledge and then divide the bibliography into sections reflecting that place. We can arrange items, say, chronologically or by language, and annotate each one. We can combine those two approaches. Or we can concoct a bibliographical essay, as Mr Borchardt, and some others, have done so effectively.

This last approach brought Mr Borchardt back to the nasty ARGC which, to me as a sweated boundary rider, began to sound like an academic BHP, so imperceptive that it was unable to understand that "scholarship is, after all, a way of life". Continuing, he told us that research is not necessarily expedient---it does all sorts of untidy things---and even attempts "mastery over nature". Consequently, the bibliographic boundary rider should get off his horse and do a bit of fencing, to contain the vagrant scholar within his proper paddock. This concentration on implied barbed-wire became even more understandable when we were reminded that Greek, Arab and Indian scholars tended to stray from their paddocks like cross-bred lambs. Ideally, said Mr Borchardt, both scholars and bibliographers should "straddle the boundaries", which would be tough on the biblio-boundary riders' backsides if we heeded Mr Borchardt's advice to use metaphorical barbed wire. He warns us that such a feat is so unusual that "few funding organizations are sufficiently imaginative to be able to tune in with the bibliographer". (Perhaps we might ask ourselves here whether the boundary rider is able to communicate satisfactorily with the boss).

In his summing up Mr Borchardt told us that the bosses need courses in art appreciation, and that exploratory boundary riding is necessary. He implied that the shepherding days are done, fences have arrived, and recognition of the need for boundary riders in "long overdue".

So the bibliographer must be a boundary rider, a surveyor, an artist, a wireless set---and perhaps a bit of a dictator as well. And anyway, the bicentenary celebrations should "stir [him] into action". Good on him! He reminds me of the Magic Pudding!

This is an inexcusably flippant survey of some of the points raised in an important paper. I can only ask you to discuss Mr Borchardt's thesis, flippantly or solemnly as your digestions incline you. If I need to remind you that the subject is bigger than definitions of the subject, then perhaps you may prefer to ditch this and discuss another question: are bibliographers human?

Mr Borchardt has summarized some of the matter we are asked to discuss and make resolutions on in the last paragraph of his paper. He asks, first of all, for an acknowledgement of the bibliographer's art. Just to get our horses going round the boundary fences, might I ask you to consider this: given that bibliography is under-rated and that the true worth and capabilities of the bibliographer are not recognized, what should we be doing about this? In particular, if we wish to impress academics, bursars, public servants, and other purse-holders, should we not give special care to communication, to high standards of expression? An aside perhaps, but, I think, an important one. Secondly, Mr Borchardt pleads for greater attention being given to the interpretative subject literature survey. Thirdly, we need a systematic approach to Australian bibliography. And finally, what should we be doing for the bicentenary?

General discussion

Introducing the discussion, D.H. Borchardt reminded participants that a large number of suggestions had been made throughout the Conference and that he hoped when these were made public that the state working parties of the Bicentennial History Project will discuss them with a view to taking some positive action.

J. Conochie referred to the difficulty which had been raised in the paper of attracting financial support from fund granting bodies for bibliographic projects. She queried what steps could be taken to gain appropriate recognition for bibliography.

The poor quality of many bibliographies was mentioned by J. Harley as one of the problems in this area. Until the possibilities and uses of bibliography were demonstrated the subject will not be properly recognized. D.H. Borchardt in agreeing with this referred to the need to encourage library schools to foster and give emphasis to bibliography as a discipline. He also reminded participants of the comprehensive review of bibliographies which was published annually in *Library services for Australia: the work of AACOBS.*

Attention was drawn to the Register of Bibliographies in Progress which was maintained at La Trobe University Library and M. Cameron suggested that consideration be given to submitting extracts from the Register to relevant journals.

S. Routh followed up these comments by maintaining that it was the duty of librarians to make evident to the scholarly community the advances which were made possible in particular areas through the availability of certain bibliographies. He suggested that one means of achieving this was to forward reviews of appropriate bibliographies to the editors of scholarly journals.

P. Maskell maintained that the problem was one of educating users and pointed out that libraries and librarians were often used as the last resort. N. Stockdale stressed the need to ensure that bibliographies were directed towards the needs of users.

Discussion closed with a number of participants commenting on the need for different types of bibliography such as the overall survey of a field, perhaps in the form of a bibliographical essay, and the more detailed bibliography covering particular areas of a discipline.

SESSION 7

GAPS IN SUBJECT BIBLIOGRAPHY

Paper by D.H. Borchardt - Chief Librarian, La Trobe University

Prepared response by V. Hankel - Senior Reference Librarian, State Library of South Australia

Chairman of Session - J. Conochie, Principal Librarian, CSIRO, Melbourne

Principal participants in General discussion

M. Cameron - Chief Librarian, Deakin University

J. Harley - Chief Librarian, Swinburne College of Technology

P. Maskell - Lecturer, Department of Library and Information Science Western Australian Institute of Technology

S. Routh - Senior Principal Librarian, Reference Services, University of Queensland

Closing remarks by D.H. Borchardt

This is the first time that AACOBS has managed to organize a conference on the topic of bibliography. I thank all of you for attending and for showing faith not only in the subject but also in the work of AACOBS. I am pleased that so many librarians and bibliographers have participated.

The papers which were spoken to at this Conference are, I believe, of a very high quality and I thank the authors for preparing them, for introducing them and for participating in the discussions. A large number of suggestions have been made both in the papers themselves and in the discussions. These suggestions will be carefully examined by the Working Party on Bibliography and a list of them will be incorporated in the Proceedings. Some of the proposals are of a very practical nature and they will, I am sure, find a positive response from the Working Party which will endeavour to ensure that some progress is achieved. The Bicentennial History Project has been referred to as one possible source of support and it is hoped that the Working Party will be able to discuss some of the proposals which arose from this Conference with that body. I trust that anyone who has further ideas following the Conference will contact me.

Finally it is my duty to acknowledge formally the contributions made by a number of individuals to the organization of the Conference. We are indebted to the Chairman of AACOBS, Sir Peter Crisp, for opening the Conference and to Mr R. Doust for arranging the venue. We should also thank Mrs J. Alison and Mr J. Thawley for assisting with the hour-to-hour running of the sessions. I express my gratitude to my colleagues on the Working Party for assistance with chairing the various sessions.

SUMMARY OF RECOMMENDATIONS

SESSION 1 THE AUSTRALIAN NATIONAL BIBLIOGRAPHY

Recommendations contained in the paper by J. Flesch

1. That entries be included in *ANB* for monographs not acquired by the National Library, provided they have been sighted by the *ANB* cataloguers. (p.11)

2. That the time-span of *ANB* be extended from 3 to 5 years. i.e. current year minus 4 instead of current year minus 2. (p.11)

3. That new serials be listed in *ANB* from the first issue received in the National Library, regardless of whether it is the first published (p.11)

4. That the National Library be asked either to expand the coverage of *ANB* to include sound recordings, audio-visual material not accompanied by print, and prints, or to produce separate listings of these. (p.11)

5. That the address of the Standards Association of Australia be given in the Preface of each issue of *ANB*. (p.11)

6. That CIP entries be omitted from annual cumulations of *ANB*. (p.11)

7. That the *ANB Author, title and series index* include references from initials filed as letters as well as from initials filed as a word.(p.11)

8. That each page of each index be identified at the head. (p.11)

9. That *ANB* users at large be consulted before any changes in *ANB* frequency or format are implemented. (p.11)

10. That a limited survey be undertaken on the relative importance of *ANB* in various library situations. taking into account non-librarian use. (p.11)

Other recommendations made during the Session

* 1. That the publications of the Standards Association of Australia be listed in *ANB*. (p.16)

* 2. That the National Library be encouraged to make *ANB* available to Australian libraries in machine readable form and not simply on a record by record basis through the present AMRS service. (p.17)

+ 3. That the national bibliographic data base be expanded to include records of works in all media in the one data base. (p.18)

SESSION 2 AUSTRALIAN GOVERNMENT PUBLICATIONS

Recommendations contained in paper by A.E. Miller

1. That the AGPS be asked to spell out the names of those statutory authorities for whose publishing it is responsible. (p.23)

2. That the AGPS be asked to include its own "non-publications" such as the Patent Office's *Australian official journal of patents, trademarks and designs* in its various lists. (p.28)

3. That the AGPS be asked to include its free publications in the *Monthly list*. (p.28)

4. That the AGPS be asked to carry forward such "Other Commonwealth Government Publications" as it lists into the *Cumulative list*. (p.29)

5. That Bills and legislation be included in the microfiche catalogue at least for the current year, or until such time as specific lists or indexes appear e.g. *Cumulative list of bills and associated material*. (p.29)

6. That the recommendation of the Joint Committee on Publications be strongly endorsed "that each publication produced by departments and statutory authorities be notified to AGPS upon its release, together with details as to the status of the document, whether it is for sale or free, and from where it can be obtained" but that the wording be amended so that "notified" reads "sent", and that the words "with the object of it being listed by AGPS" be added. However, to address this recommendation to AGPS would achieve little and steps should be taken for this issue to be addressed to a higher authority. (p.29)

7. That AGPS be asked to consider the following arrangement of its monthly and cumulative lists: part I "Parliamentary publications, retaining the numerical arrangement for Parliamentary papers; part II "Legislation" - an alphabetical arrangement of Bills and a numerical arrangement of Acts and Statutory rules, ACT Ordinances and Regulations; part III "Gazettes"; part IV "Departmental publications".

   Some radical changes are called for in Part IV. The basic arrangement should be by corporate body, along the lines of *Canadian government publications;* this would mean an amalgamation of departmental and statutory authority monographs and serials, priced and free, AGPS and non-AGPS, batched under the name of each department and statutory authority. There should be an index at the back to all four parts - including parliamentary publications and legislation - with entries by personal author, chairman, editor, title, series and subject. In the case of Parliamentary papers, the index should refer the user to both sequences. (p.29)

8. The entries for free material included in the *Weekly list* are complete except for collation and the ISBN; this information is not readily available until it appears in the *Cumulative list*. For selection purposes, it is extremely useful to know whether a "not for sale" item comprises 5 or 50 pages, and it is recommended that this detail be included in the *Weekly list*. (p.30)

9. Serial entries are recorded in full each time they appear: title, volume, number, date, responsible body, imprint, weight, price, catalogue number. There are thus 52 full entries for the weekly *Commonwealth record* in the *Cumulative list*. It is recommended that this information be reduced, so that both the title and responsible

209

body are recorded only once in each issue, and the rest of the information is indented. (p.30)

10. That AGPS be asked to reformat entries so that the AGPS catalogue number, unquestionably an essential part of the entry, does not come at the start of each entry. It is recommended that they be put on the bottom line of the entry, with price and weight, or if this is impossible, moved to the right hand margin. (p.30)

11. That the AGPS provide much more extensive advertising for the microfiche edition of its catalogue in journals such as the *ALJ*, *AARL*, *ASLN*. (p.30)

12. It may be worth while taking up the Joint Committee's recommendation "that the AGPS initiate discussions with representatives of AACOBS and the State Library Boards on the desirability of establishing an advisory board similar to the HMSO Services Working Party" (Para 19.8) This may or may not have taken place by the time of making this review, and it is strongly recommended that one or two librarians outside the AGPS be present at any such discussions, should the advisory board not be established by then. (p.30)

13. That a request be made to an authority higher than the NSW Government Printer, urging the Government Printer to prepare a general listing of his stock, as well as a listing of what he actually prints as well as publishes. (p.31)

14. That the NSW Government Printer be ordered to include session and Pp number of part of the entry in the Parliamentary paper section of *Publications issued*, and to ensure that all printings of Bills emanating from both houses are included. (p.31)

15. That the Queensland Government Printer be asked to produce a full and regular listing of the material which he prints and/or sells. (p.31)

16. That the S.A. Government Printer be urged to resume a monthly list and to include in it all publications which he prints or for which he is in any way responsible. (p.32)

17. That the Tasmanian Government Printer be asked to produce an independent, full and regular listing of the material which he prints or sells. (p.32)

18. It would be valuable to include in *MLP* a record of those departmental publications which the Victorian Government Printing Office does not print or sell and source of supply, and it is recommended that the Government Printer be asked to do this. (p.32)

19. That the Vic. Govt Printer be asked to ensure that all printing of Bills emanating from both houses are included in the list. Bibliographic detail for current publications appears to be quite adequate; it would be helpful to include in the section headed "Previously listed publications" the date of publication of each item. (p.32)

20. The W.A. Government Printer issues a *Quarterly price list and information sheet* and appears to list only legislation and the Government gazette. It is recommended that he be urged to list all publications for which he is responsible. (p.32)

21. That the Northern Territory Government Printer be requested to compile a retrospective list of his publications issued from July 1978, and for a list of current publications which he prints/distributes/sells to be compiled on a regular basis, i.e. not less than quarterly. (p.33)

22. Since the *Copyright Act,* Cabinet decisions, Treasury circulars etc. are not working adequately where they relate to centralised production, deposit etc., it is recommended that ways of enforcing these provisions be looked into. (p.34)

23. That a comparative evaluation be made between *ANB* and *AGP* and between the state sections of these two bibliographies and the state lists, with regard to timeliness and comprehensiveness. (p.35)

24. That simultaneously with the suggested evaluation, discussions be held with the National Library to see if it would be possible to raise the priority of *AGP*, to issue it more frequently and more speedily, and to enlarge its scope. (p.35)

25. That discussions be held with the National Library on the possible ways of improving *AGP,* with special reference to the following:

    (a) the possibility of compiling a more comprehensive bibliography, that is *AGP* expanded to include separate categories for local and intergovernmental publications

    (b) the inclusion of subordinate legislation

    (c) the inclusion of all printings of bills emanating from each house of all legislatures, including explanatory memoranda

    (d) the recording of bills under the heading of the appropriate legislature

    (e) the issuing of *AGP* on a monthly bais, in mimeographed form, unindexed, but including information about agency name changes

    (f) the continued inclusion of contributed entries

    (g) the continuation of the printed quarterly and annual cumulations

    (h) the inclusion of all publications over 2 years old, if not previously listed

    (i) the inclusion of publications of limited distribution and not available for distribution, with a note regarding limitations

    (j) the possibility of *AGP* being made available as a computerised data base through AUSINET. (pp.35-36)

26. Should it become clear, after the evaluation of the list and discussion with the National Library, that the state library lists are necessary, as well as *AGP* then it is recommended:

(a) that a request be made to the State Library of Tasmania for *TGP* to be resumed

(b) that a request be made to the WA Parliamentary Library for the continuation of *OPWA*

(c) that the specific recommendations for the various state lists which follow be made

(d) that the National Library be requested to expand *AGP* to include categories for local and intergovernmental publications; that it include subordinate legislation; that federal material be notified monthly in a mimeographed list; that the printed quarterly and annual indexed cumulations continue; that publications over 2 years old be included; that it continue contributed entries; that it include publications of limited distribution, with a note regarding limitations. (p.36)

27. That the State Library of New South Wales be asked to list in *New South Wales official publications* the publications of municipal shire councils; to include publications of limited distribution and those not available for distribution, maps and films, rules, regulations, by-laws and ordinances; a list of periodicals; to ensure that all printings of Bills are included; to include ISBNs and ISSNs as part of the bibliographic description; to include an index to titles and subjects, and notes regarding administrative changes. (p.40)

28. That the Library Board of Queensland be asked to include in *Queensland government publications* local government publications; audiovisual material; Statutory rules; to ensure that all printings of Bills are included; to include publications which are not available for distribution; ISSNs and ISBNs; information regarding structural changes to government and agency name changes; to produce an annual cumulation (from 1977) with indexes to personal authors, titles and subjects; to try to issue *QGP* more promptly. (p.41)

29. That limited distribution material be included in *Monthly list of publications of South Australian interest;* plus publications which are not available for distribution; that individual annuals be recorded; that there be an annual list of periodicals; that individual Bills (all printings), Acts and Statutory rules be included; that the State Library be encouraged to pursue more actively and list SA government publications; that ISSNs and ISBNs be included, also source of supply and price. (p.42)

30. That local government publications, with no lower limit to page numbers be included in *Victorian government publications;* that all printings of Bills emanating from each house be included; that open entries for new serials be carried forward from the monthly issues to the annual cumulation; that publications over 2 years old be included; that a title and subject index be added to the annual cumulation. (p.43)

31. That the Western Australian Parliamentary Library be asked to consider broadening the coverage of *OPWA* to include the publications of "certain autonomous statutory bodies" which are at present excluded, as well as those of local government authorities; that it include films, maps, and publications of limited distribution and those not available for distribution;

that individual Parliamentary papers, Bills (all printings) and Statutory rules be included; that the form of entry for serials be standardised, that ABS WA Office publications be excluded (the WA office provides an adequate list, as well as ABS in Canberra), or else that it be clearly indicated that they are federal government publications; that there be no cut-off date for older publications; that the standard of bibliographic description be raised and applied consistently; that items which have not been sighted be included and marked with a symbol; that access be provided to personal names; that an annual cumulation be made; and that notes regarding structural changes in government be included. (pp.44-45)

32. That the clerks of papers of the parliaments of Queensland and Victoria be written to, asking them to take the necessary steps to have indexes to their papers compiled and published; that the clerk of the papers of the W.A. Parliament be written to, to ascertain what plans exist for the indexing of papers from 1957 on. (p.46)

33. That means be found to compile retrospective bibliographies for each of the five colonies other than WA from their inception to 1900. It is to be hoped, not only from the point of view of government publications, that work will be resumed on the retrospective national bibliography, 1901-1950; it may be worth while approaching the National Library to ask them to consider a separate sequence for government publications arranged by jurisdiction and corporate author, and incorporating notes about administrative changes. (p.47)

34. That the National Library be asked to include entries for Australian government publications in NUCOM. (p.47)

Other recommendations made during the Session

+1. That efforts be made for the compilation of both more complete and more rapidly updated government directories. (p.59)

*2. That the *Commonwealth government directory* be considered for inclusion in AUSINET.

+3. That the regional committees of AACOBS invite government printers to attend those meetings at which matters of interest to the government printer are on the agenda. (p.61)

*4. That attempts be made, through existing training courses, to educate the local government officers who are responsible for issuing local government material about the need for bibliographical control. (p.69)

SESSION 3 AUSTRALIAN INDEXING SERVICES

Recommendations made during the Session

+1. That consideration be given to providing initial resource funding for commercial organizations to encourage the establishment of required indexing services. (p.89)

+2. That those bodies which are responsible for compiling indexes be encouraged to include the following types of material where appropriate: society newsletters; technical and report type material; unpublished conference papers; theses; and data in machine readable form. (p.90)

SESSION 4a NONBOOK MATERIALS - MAPS

Recommendations made during the Session

*1. That a bibliography of official government department map catalogues and indexes be prepared. (p.109)

*2. That a union list of map series be prepared. (p.109)

*3. That a list of current Australian atlases be prepared. (p.110)

*4. That a retrospective list of atlases be prepared. (p.110)

*5. That annual and five yearly cumulations of *Overseas map acquisitions* be made available. (p.110)

*6. That five years and ten year cumulations of *Australian maps* be made available. (p.110)

*7. That a retrospective catalogue of historical maps be prepared. (110)

*8. That the National Library consider the preparation of a microfiche of index maps relating to its holdings particularly with respect to foreign series. (p.110)

*9. That State Advisory Mapping Committees be encouraged to produce and publish catalogues or lists of newly released maps. (p.110)

*10. That the National Mapping Council be approached with the suggestion that a standard format for the presentation of bibliographic information be employed by all state mapping authorities both on their maps and in their catalogues. (p.110)

SESSION 4b NONBOOK MATERIALS - MUSIC

Recommendations contained in the paper by H. Sugden

1. That a general national discography be established which would include Australian music released overseas and overseas recordings released in Australia. (p.117)

2. That the Australia Music Centre be responsible for publishing an Australian National Music Bibliography. (p.117)

3. That, if the second recommendation is not feasible, the Australia Music Centre play a more positive role in alerting the National Library to material which is published. (p.117)

214

Other recommendations made during the Session

*1. The Australia Music Centre send its cataloguing output to NUCOMUSIC and NUCORECORDINGS and that this data be included in *ANB* as appropriate. (p.120)

*2. The Australia Music Centre accept responsibility for regular periodic listings of unpublished and "For Hire Only" music. (p.120)

*3. The Music Board be approached to provide sufficient staff in the Australia Music Centre to allow the previous two recommendations to be carried out. (p.120)

*4. The National Library be requested to allow new entries to NUCOMUSIC to be added into its data base (using WLN) at the earliest possible opportunity, and therefore ultimately into the proposed Australian Bibliographic Network. (p.121)

*5. The National Library be approached to allow the NUCOMUSIC retrospective file to be entered in the same manner. (p.121)

*6. Funds be made available or be sought to allow for the entry of the NUCOMUSIC retrospective file (approximately 70,000 entries) into the National Library's data base and therefore ultimately into the proposed ABN. (p.121)

*7. Funds be sought from the Music Board of Australia Council to allow for the cataloguing of Australian music held in libraries throughout the country and for the forwarding of that data to NUCOMUSIC. (p.121)

*8. The National Library be approached to make staff available to permit cataloguing of current material in the Music and Sound Recordings Section of the National Library, and to allow the bibliographic data to be entered directly into its data base. (p.122)

*9. The National Library be approached to make staff available to overcome the cataloguing backlog of published Australian music and sound recordings held in the National Library, and to allow the data to be entered directly into its data base. (p.122)

SESSION 5 NATIONAL UNION CATALOGUES

Recommendation made during the Session

*1. That the Standing Committee of AACOBS be requested to approach the National Library and the CSIRO to emphasize to those bodies the critical importance of the development and up-to-date maintenance of the respective national union catalogues in their custody for library and information services in Australia. (p.158)

SESSION 6 RETROSPECTIVE NATIONAL BIBLIOGRAPHY

Recommendations made during the Session

*1. That AACOBS emphasize to the National Library of Australia the great importance of completing the *Addenda* to Ferguson and RNB 1901-1950 and encourage and support that institution in its efforts to do so. (p.179)

*2. That the AACOBS Working Party on Bibliography give serious consideration to the proposal outlined on pages 172 and 179 to prepare a retrospective periodical index. (p.180-181)

SESSION 7 GAPS IN SUBJECT BIBLIOGRAPHY

Recommendations made during the Session

+1. That consideration be given to forwarding extracts from the Register of Bibliographies in Progress, which is maintained at La Trobe University Library, to relevant journals. (p.197)

+2. That, in order to make evident to the scholarly community the advances which were made possible in certain areas through the availability of certain bibliographies, reviews of appropriate bibliographies be forwarded to the editors of scholarly journals. (p.197)

*Recommendations which were formally stated

+Other suggestions made during discussion

ABBREVIATIONS

AACOBS	Australian Advisory Council on Bibliographical Services
AALC	AGPS-AACOBS Liaison Committee
AARDS	Australian Advertising Rate and Data Service
AARL	*Australian academic and research libraries*
ABN	Australian Bibliographic Network
ABS	Australian Bureau of Statistics
ACER	Australian Council for Educational Research
AEI	*Australian education index*
AESIS	Australian Earth Sciences Information System
AGP	*Australian government publications*
AGPS	Australian Government Publishing Service
AGRIS	International Information System for the Agricultural Sciences and Technology
ALJ	*Australian library journal*
AMF	Australian Mineral Foundation
AMRS	Australian MARC Records Service
ANB	*Australian national bibliography*
AND	Australian National Discography
ANMB	Australian National Music Bibliography
APAIS	*Australian public affairs information service*
ARERI	*Australian renewable energy resources index*
ARGC	Australian Research Grants Committee
ARI	*Australian road index*
ARRB	Australian Road Research Board
ASI	*Australian science index*
ASLN	*Australian special libraries news*
AUSINET	Australian Information Network
AUSIRC	Australian Sport Information Resource Centre

BCM	*British catalogue of music*

CAE	College of Advanced Education
CAUL	Committee of Australian University Libraries
CAVAL	Cooperative Action by Victorian Academic Libraries
CLANN	College Libraries Activity Network of New South Wales
CSIRO	Commonwealth Scientific and Industrial Research Organization

IAMLANZ	International Association of Music Libraries - Australia and New Zealand Branch
IJS	Institute of Jazz Studies (Rutgers University)

LAA	Library Association of Australia

MLP	*Monthly list of publications* (Victoria)
MLPSA	*Monthly list of publications of South Australian interest received in the State Library of South Australia*
NAL	*Newspapers in Australian libraries*
NLA	National Library of Australia
NSWOP	*New South Wales official publications*
NUCOM	*National Union Catalogue of Monographs*
NUCOMUSIC	National Union Catalogue of Music
NUCORECORDINGS	National Union Catalogue of Sound Recordings
NZNB	*New Zealand national bibliography*
OPWA	*Official publications of Western Australia*
QGP	*Queensland government publications*
RNB	Retrospective National Bibliography
SALSSAH	*Serials in Australian libraries: social sciences and humanities*
SSAL	*Scientific serials in Australian libraries*
TAFE	Technical and further education
TGP	*Tasmanian government publications*
VGP	*Victorian government publications*
WISMI	World Inventory of Sources of Music Information
WLN	Washington Library Network
WPB	Working Party on Bibliography (of the Australian Advisory Council on Bibliographical Services)
WPIR	Working Party on Information Resources (of the Australian Advisory Council on Bibliographical Services)

NAME AND TITLE INDEX

This index covers titles of works and names of persons referred to in the papers and discussions. References to persons have been set in bold type when the entry refers to a written or spoken contribution made by an individual during each Session.

AACOBS, *see* Australian Advisory Council on Bibliographical Services
AALC, *see* AGPS-AACOBS Liaison Committee
ABN, *see* Australian Bibliographic Network
ABS, *see* Australian Bureau of Statistics
ACER, *see* Australian Council for Educational Research
AEI, see Australian education index
AESIS, *see* Australian Earth Sciences Information System
AGP, see Australian government publications
AGPS, *see* Australian Government Publishing Service
AGPS-AACOBS Liaison Committee (AALC), 59
AGPS fortnightly catalogue, 24
AGRIS, *see* International Information System for the Agricultural Sciences and Technology
ALCAE, *see* Association of Librarians of Colleges of Advanced Education
AMF, *see* Australian Mineral Foundation
AMRS, *see* Australian MARC Records Service
ANB, see Australian national bibliography
AND, *see* Australian National Discography
ANMB, *see* Australian National Music Bibliography
APAIS, see Australian public affairs information service
ARERI, see Australian renewable energy resources index
ARGC, *see* Australian Research Grants Committee
ARI, see Australian road index
ARRB, *see* Australian Road Research Board
ASI, see Australian science index
AUSINET, 1, 5, 36, 53, 59, 64, 72-80 *passim,* 84, 85
AUSIRC, *see* Australian Sport Information Resource Centre
Abbott, D., 71-86, 88,89, 184
The Age, 80
Air photos and related products, 96
Alexander, G. *Guide to atlases...,* 97
Alison, J., 199
Alonso, P.A.G. *Directory of map collections in Australia,* 95
Alonso, P.A.G. *Guide to planning information sources,* 95
Alonso, P.A.G. *Map collections in public libraries,* 93
Alonso, P.A.G. *Map information for the National Inventory of Historic Buildings,* 95
Alonso, P.A.G. *Victorian planners catalogue of maps and map sources,* 95, 98
American Geographical Society. *Current geographical publications,* 93, 97
American Geographical Society. Map Department. *Index to maps in books and periodicals,* 98
Annual catalogue of Australian publications, 1, 46, 47, 163, 165
Annual reports of Commonwealth departments and statutory authorities, 49
Army, *see* Australia. Army
Association of Canadian Map Libraries, 97
Association of Librarians of Colleges of Advanced Education (ALCAE), 141
Atlases and cartography, 98
Australasian bibliography, 46
Australia. Army. Directorate of Military Surveys. *Catalogue of official military maps,* 96

Australia. Department of National Development. Resources Information and Development Branch. *Index to Australian resources maps of 1940-1959,* 96

Australia. Parliament. Joint Committee on Publications, 22, 27, 29, 47, 48-49, 50, 51

Australia. Parliament. Joint Committee on Publications. *Annual reports of Commonwealth departments and statutory authorities,* 49

Australia. Parliament. Joint Committee on Publications. *The Australian Government Publishing Service... 1964-1978,* 22

Australia. Parliament. Joint Select Committee on Parliamentary and Government Publications,*see* Erwin Committee

Australia. Senate Standing Committee on Finance and Government Operations. *Statutory authorities of the Commonwealth: first report,* 26, 48

Australia. Senate Standing Committee on Science and the Environment. *Report on annual reports....,* 48

Australia Council. Music Board, 120, 121

Australia Music Centre, 116, 117, 120-121, 123, 188

Australia Music Centre. *Catalogues of Australian compositions,* 116

The Australian, 80

Australian advertising rate and data service, 78

Australian Advisory Council on Bibliographical Services (AACOBS), 19, 21, 29, 30, 59-65 *passim*, 69, 86, 88, 139, 141, 158, 164, 166, 167, 174, 179, 199

Australian Advisory Council on Bibliographical Services. *Library services for Australia: the work of AACOBS,* 197

Australian Advisory Council on Bibliographical Services. New South Wales Regional Committee, 4, 174

Australian Advisory Council on Bibliographical Services. Task Force on Government Publications, 21, 31, 38, 47

Australian Advisory Council on Bibliographical Services. Victorian Regional Committee, 145

Australian Advisory Council on Bibliographical Services. Victorian Regional Committee. Sub-Committee on Government Publications. *Government publications of Australia; a list of lists,* 21, 47

Australian Advisory Council on Bibliographical Services. Working Party on Bibliography, 21, 29, 47, 49, 51, 57, 80, 181, 183, 187, 199

Australian Advisory Council on Bibliographical Services. Working Party on Information Resources, 29, 51

Australian Archives, 180

Australian Art Information Centre Research Project, 85, 190

Australian Bibliographic Network (ABN), 62, 121, 122, 154, 155-156, 157, 179

Australian bibliography, 93, 190

Australian Bureau of Statistics (ABS), 23, 44, 49

Australian catalogue, 46, 164

Australian Council for Educational Research (ACER), 75, 76, 77

Australian Earth Sciences Information System (AESIS), 74, 75-76

Australian education index (AEI) 72-77 *passim,* 87, 88

Australian films, 38, 47, 170, 171

Australian Gallery Directors Council, 171

Australian geographer, 97

Australian geographical studies, 97

Australian government publications (AGP), 7, 23, 26, 33-54, *passim,* 57-68 *passim,* 107, 180

Australian Government Publishing Service (AGPS), 2, 22-52 *passim,* 57-58, 59, 60, 61, 62, 66

Australian Government Publishing Service. *AGPS fortnightly catalogue,* 24
Australian Government Publishing Service. *Cumulative list of government publications,* 24, 25, 29, 30, 50, 51
Australian Government Publishing Service. *Monthly list of publications placed on sale,* 24, 25, 28, 29, 30, 50
Australian Government Publishing Service. *Weekly list of government publications,* 23, 24, 28, 29, 30, 57
The Australian Government Publishing Service... 1964-1978, 22, 27
Australian Institute of Cartographers, 98
Australian Map Curator's Circle, 97, 98
Australian maps, 38, 47, 94, 99, 107, 108, 109, 110, 111, 170
Australian MARC Records Service (AMRS), 1, 17
Australian Mineral Foundation (AMF), 75-76
Australian national bibliography (ANB), 1-19, 26, 34-40 *passim,* 47, 53, 62-68 *passim,* 94, 107, 114-115, 120, 163-184 *passim*
Australian National Discography (AND), 117, 118, 121, 122
Australian National Gallery Library, 85
Australian National Music Bibliography (ANMB), 117-122 *passim*
Australian newspaper index feasibility study, 73, 80, 89
Australian official journal of patents, trademarks and designs, 28, 50
Australian official publications, 21
Australian parliamentary serials...., 45
Australian public affairs information services (APAIS), 49, 71-80 *passim,* 84-85, 86, 87
Australian renewable energy resources index (ARERI), 89
Australian Research Grants Committee (ARGC), 186, 190, 194
Australian road index (ARI), 74-75, 76, 77
Australian Road Research Board (ARRB), 75
Australian science index (ASI), 74, 77-78, 79, 84, 85, 88
Australian Society of indexers, 71, 82, 89
Australian Sport Information Resource Centre (AUSIRC), 86

BCM, see British catalogue of music
BNB, see British national bibliography
Bays, Mary, 74, 80
Bibliographie cartographique internationale, 93, 109
Bibliographie geographique internationale, 97
Bibliography of Australia, 46, 161-164
Bibliography of Captain James Cook, 162
Bicentennial History Project, 110, 179, 196, 199
Bolto, J.C., 56
Bonwick, J., 162
Borchardt, D.H., 16, 21, 47, 48 68, 69, 110, 113, 158,179, 180, 183-193, 194, 195, 196, 197, 199
Borchardt, D.H., *Australian bibliography,* 93, 190
Borchardt, D.H., *Australian official publications,* 21
Borchardt, D.H., *Checklists of royal commissions....,* 46
Borchardt, D.H., *Twelve essays on Australian subject bibliography,* 84, 88, 184, 185, 187, 194
Braybrooke, E.K., 88
British catalogue of music, 114
British Library. *Catalogue of printed maps, charts and plans,* 93, 98

British national bibliography (BNB), 17, 19, 166
Bryan, H., 19
Bundy, A., 86
Buzacott, M., 116

CAUL, *see* Committee of Australian University Libraries
CAVAL, *see* Co-operative Action by Victorian Academic Libraries
CIP, *see* Cataloguing in Publication
CLANN, *see* College Libraries Activity Network of New South Wales
COCOL, *see* Committee of College Librarians
CSIRO, *see* Commonwealth Scientific and Industrial Research Organization
CSIRO index, 72
Callaway, F., 116
Cameron, M., 18, 90, 157, 179, 181, 197
Cartography, 97
Cartography in Western Australia, 95
Catalogue of maps in the Map Library of the Department of Geography, University of Sydney, 94
Catalogue of official military maps, 96
Catalogue of printed maps, charts and plans, 93, 98
Catalogue of the Library of the Parliament from its commencement to May 1906, 46
Catalogues of Australian compositions, 116
Cataloguing in Publication (CIP), 4, 5, 11, 13, 16
Caudell, A.B., 32
Checklists of royal commissions..., 46
Choate, R., 181
Classified catalogue of Australiana in the Public Lending Library of Victoria, 164
Clayton, P., 48
College Libraries Activity Network of New South Wales (CLANN), 156
Committee of Australian University Librarians (CAUL), 141
Committee of College Librarians (S.A.) (COCOL), 142
Commonwealth government directory, 59
Commonwealth publications: official list, 23
Commonwealth Scientific and Industrial Research Organization (CSIRO), 16, 49, 72, 75, 78-79, 89, 140, 145, 146, 147, 154, 158
Conochie, J., 157-158, 179, 196
Co-operative Action by Victorian Academic Libraries (CAVAL), 18, 141, 142, 152, 156
Cope, R., 31, 38, 59-62, 68, 174, 177, 187
Cope, R., *Australian parliamentary serials...*, 45
Copyright Act, 2, 15, 16, 27, 33-34, 38, 53
Craig, C., 171
Crisp, Sir Peter, vii-viii, 199
Crittenden, V., 157
Crook, P., 120-122, 123
Crowley, F., 187
Cumulative list of government publications, 24, 25, 29, 30, 50, 51
Current Australian and New Zealand legal literature index, 88
Current Australian serials, 2, 47, 78
Current British government publishing, 28
Current geographical publications, 93, 97
Curriculum Development Centre, 76

Davidson, F.G., 185
Dave, P., 151-154, 155
Department of National Development, *see* Australia. Department of National Development
Dictionary catalog of printed books, 46, 164, 165, 172
Directory of map collections in Australia, 95
Division of National Mapping, 95-96, 108, 110
Division of National Mapping. *Air photos and related products,* 96
Division of National Mapping. *Maps of Australia and Australian territories,* 95
Division of National Mapping. *Maps of external territories,* 96
Division of National Mapping. *Thematic mapping bulletin,* 96, 108, 110
Doust, R., 199

East Asian language materials, 137
Electoral maps..., 98
Erwin Committee, 26, 29, 51
Evans, J., 18

Fanning, P., 161-176, 177, 178, 179, 180, 181
Ferguson, J.A., 161-170 *passim*
Ferguson, J.A., *Bibliography of Australia,* 46, 161-164
Ferguson *Addenda,* 169-170, 174-181
Ferguson gap, 46
Fielding, D., 69
Flesch, J., 1-14, 15, 17, 18, 19
Ford, E., 162, 163
Foxcroft, A.B. *Australian catalogue,* 46, 164
Freedom of Information Bill, 69
Freestone, R.G., 84, 185
Fryer Library, 89

Gandevia, B., 187
Garrow, C., 82, 89
General world atlases in print, 98
Geo abstracts, 97
The geographical journal, 97
The geographical magazine, 97
Geographical review, 97
Geographical Society of New South Wales. *Australian geographer,* 97
Geography, 97
Geography teacher, 97
Gilbert, A., 68, 158
The globe, 97
Government publications of Australia : a list of lists, 21, 47
Groenewegen, H., 17-18, 89-90, 154-156, 157
Guide to atlases..., 97
Guide to maps of the Australian continental shelf, 95
Guide to planning information sources, 95
Guidelines, 72, 74

Hankel, V., 194-196
Harley, J., 197
Harrington, M., 47
Healesville Advanced Workshop on Bibliographical Services, 166
Hine, J., 180
Horn, K., 113, 118, 123, 185
Horton, A., 158

IAMLANZ, *see* International Association of Music Libraries - Australia and New Zealand

IJS, *see* Institute of Jazz studies
Index of Australian charts, 96
Index to Australian book reviews, 73, 86, 87-88
Index to Australian resources maps of 1940-59, 96
Index to current information, 73
Index to maps in books and periodicals, 98
Index to the papers presented to Parliament, 25
Index to the Sydney morning herald and Sydney mail, 79
Index translationum, 2, 19
Industry Information Network Liaison Committee, 78
Institute of Australian Geographers. *Australian geographical studies*, 97
Institute of Jazz Studies (IJS), 126, 130, 134
International Association of Music Libraries - Australia and New Zealand (IAMLANZ), 121
International Information System for the Agricultural Sciences and Technology (AGRIS), 79, 85, 89

Johansson, E. *Current British government publishing*, 28
Joint Committee on Publications, *see* Australia. Parliament. Joint Committee on Publications
Joint Select Committee on Parliamentary and Government Publications, *see* Erwin Committee

Kelman, B., 80

La Trobe University Library, 126-132 *passim*, 134, 135, 181
Legal deposit Victoria, 34, 42, 95
Levick, G.R.T., 79, 85, 185
Library Association of Australia. Special Libraries Section, 74
Library Association of Australia. Victorian Branch. Healesville Advanced Workshop on Bibliographical Services. 166
Library Board of Queensland, 41, 54
Library of Congress. Map Division. *A list of geographical atlases*, 98
Library of New South Wales. *Map series held in the Mitchell Library...*, 94
Library of New South Wales. *The Map Collection in the State Library of New South Wales*, 94
Library services for Australia: the work of AACOBS, 197
A list of geographical atlases, 98

MLP, see Monthly list of publications (Victoria)
MLPSA, see Monthly list of publications of South Australian interest
Macallister, J., 14-17, 18
Macartney, F.T., 162, 163, 175, 177
McCredie, A., 116
McMullin, B.J., 161
McQueen, J., 157, 180
The Map Collection in the State Library of New South Wales, 94

Map collections in public libraries, 93
Map information for the National Inventory of Historic Buildings, 95
Map series held in the Mitchell Library..., 94
The mapping of Australia, 98, 170
Maps of Australia and Australian territories, 95
Maps of external territories, 96
Maps of Western Australia and their uses, 95
Maps received in the Mitchell Library, 94
Maskell, P., 197
Mathews, G.M., 163
Mayer, H. *Electoral maps...*, 98
Middleton, M., 90
Miller, A.E., 21-59, 60-69 *passim*, 177, 180 187
Miller, E.M., 162, 163, 175, 177, 187
Mitchell Library. *Bibliography of Captain James Cook*, 162
Mitchell Library. *Dictionary catalog of printed books*, 46, 164, 165, 172
Mitchell Library. *Maps received in the Mitchell Library*, 94
Monie, J., 187, 190
Monthly catalogue of publications placed on sale, 24
Monthly list of publications (Victoria), 32, 52
Monthly list of publications of South Australian interest received in the State Library of South Australia (MLPSA), 34, 41, 42, 54
Monthly list of publications placed on sale, 24, 25, 28, 29, 30, 50
Morrison, E., 159
Murdoch, A., 117
Musgrave, A., 163
Music Australia, 116, 117

NAL, see Newspapers in Australian libraries
NATMAP, *see* Division of National Mapping
NSWOP, see New South Wales official publications received in the State Library of New South Wales
NUCOM, see National union catalogue of monographs
NUCOMUSIC, *see* National Union Catalogue of Music
NUCORECORDINGS, *see* National Union Catalogue of Sound Recordings
NZNB, see New Zealand national bibliography
National Library of Australia, 1-193 *passim*. *See also* specific services provided by The National Library and its publications, e.g. *Australian national bibliography*, *NUCOM*, *Scientific serials in Australian libraries*.
National Mapping Council, 108, 110, 111
National Maritime Museum. Library. *Atlases and cartography*, 98
National times, 80
National union catalogue of monographs (NUCOM), 47, 55, 115, 137, 142-147 *passim*, 152-158 *passim*, 164, 168, 171, 181
National Union Catalogue of Music (NUCOMUSIC), 115-116, 120, 121, 122, 137, 144, 145, 171
National Union Catalogue of Sound Recordings (NUCORECORDINGS), 116, 120, 137, 171
New geographical literature and maps, 93, 97
New South Wales. Central Mapping Authority, 107
New South Wales. Education Department. Curriculum Information Project, 77
New South Wales Government Printer, 31, 52
New South Wales official publications received in the State Library of New South Wales (NSWOP), 34, 35, 40, 54
New York Public Library. *Dictionary catalog of the Map Division*, 98
New Zealand national bibliography (NZNB), 17
Newspapers in Australian libraries (NAL), 137, 164
Northern Territory Government Printer, 32-33, 53

OPWA, see Official publications of Western Australia
Official publications of Western Australia (OPWA), 33, 34, 36, 43-44, 54, 61, 68
Overseas map acquisitions, 94, 99, 107, 108, 110, 111

Parliament. Joint Committee on Publications, *see* Australia. Parliament. Joint Committee on Publications
Parliament. Joint Select Committee on Parliamentary and Government Publications, *see* Erwin Committee
Patent Office. *Australian official journal of patents, trademarks and designs,* 28, 50
Petherick, E., 172
Pettitt, J., 116
Pinpointer, 72, 73, 77, 79, 86, 87, 88
Pinson, W., 69, 180
Prescott, D., 109-110, 111
Prescott, D., *Guide to maps of the Australian continental shelf,* 95
Prescott, D., *Some suggestions for a basic Australian reference collection in the map room,* 94
Progress report on surveying and mapping, 96
Public Record Office, 98
Public Service Act, 22, 23, 26

QGP, see Queensland government publications
Quarterly price list and information sheet, 32, 52
Queensland. Department of Mapping and Surveying, 107
Queensland Government Printer, 31, 52
Queensland government publications (QGP), 34, 35, 41, 54

RNB, *see* Retrospective National Bibliography
Rauchle, N.M. *Directory of map collections in Australia,* 95
Register of Bibliographies in Progress, 181, 197
Report on annual reports referred to the Committee, 48
Retrospective National Bibliography (RNB), 46, 47, 54, 161-182, 193
Richardson, W.D., 86-89
Routh, S., 19, 68, 89, 181, 197
Royal, I., 18, 19, 62-67, 68, 179, 181
Royal Australian Navy. *Index of Australian charts,* 96
Royal Australian Survey Corps. *Progress report on surveying and mapping,* 96
Royal Empire Society. *Subject catalogue of the library,* 164
Royal Geographical Society. *New geographical literature and maps,* 93, 97
Russell, E., 170
Russell, H.M., 185
Rutgers University. Institute of Jazz Studies (IJS), 128, 130, 134
Rydon, J., 84, 88

SALSSAH, see Serials in Australian libraries: social sciences and humanities
SSAL, see Scientific serials in Australian libraries

Scientific serials in Australian libraries (SSAL), 137, 143-144, 145, 146, 152, 157, 158, 164
Scrivener, J., 180
Senate Standing Committee on Finance and Government Operations, *see* Australia. Senate Standing Committee on Finance and Government Operations
Senate Standing Committee on Science and the Environment, *see* Australia. Senate Standing Committee on Science and the Environment
Serials in Australian libraries : social sciences and humanities (SALSSAH), 137, 143-144, 145, 152, 157, 158, 163, 164
Serials Rationalization Project (AACOBS), 145, 148
Sharman, R., 68
Sharman, B.P., 25, 26, 30, 52
Simkin, J., 89, 123
Society of University Geographers, 97
Some suggestions for a basic Australian reference collection in the map room, 94
South Australian Government Printer, 31, 32, 52
South Australian government publications, 31-32
South Australiana, 42
Special Libraries Association. Geography and Map Division, 97
Stafford, R. *Australian newspaper index feasibility study*, 73, 80, 89
Standards Association of Australia, 2, 3, 11, 16, 18
State Library of New South Wales, 40, 47, 54, 162
State Library of Queensland, 41
State Library of South Australia, 35, 39, 41, 42, 54, 73
State Library of Tasmania, 35, 36, 39, 42, 53, 78
State Library of Victoria, 47, 94, 145
State Library of Victoria. *Classified catalogue of Australiana in the Public Lending Library of Victoria*, 164
State Library of Victoria. *Legal deposit Victoria*, 34, 42, 95
Statutory authorities of the Commonwealth : first report, 26, 48
Stecher, G., 125-135
Stockdale, N., 135, 137-151, 152-156 *passim*, 157, 159, 177
Sugden, H., 113-120, 135
Sweet and Maxwell Ltd., 163
Sydney morning herald, 80
Symes, L., 74

TGP, see Tasmanian government publications
Task Force on Government Publications, *see* Australian Advisory Council on Bibliographical services. Task Force on Government Publications
Tasmanian Government Printer, 32, 52
Tasmanian government publications (TGP), 35, 36, 39, 42, 53
Technilib, 156
Thawley, J., 88, 187, 199
Thematic mapping bulletin, 96, 108, 110
Tooley, R.V. *The mapping of Australia*, 98, 170
Tunley, D., 116
Twelve essays on Australian subject bibliography, 84, 88, 184, 185, 187, 194

Union catalogue of scientific and technical periodicals in the libraries of Australia, 145

University of Adelaide. Geography Department. Map Library. *Maps received,* 94
University of Queensland. Fryer Library, 89
University of Sydney. Department of Geography. *Catalogue of maps in the Map Library of the Department of Geography, University of Sydney,* 94
University of Tasmania. Department of Geography, 94
University of Western Australia. Department of Geography, 94
University of Western Australia. Department of Geology, 94

VGP, see Victorian government publications
Victoria. Department of Crown Lands and Survey, 107
Victoria. Department of Minerals and Energy, 107
Victorian Government Printing Office, 32, 52
Victorian government publications (VGP), 34, 42-43, 54, 59, 64, 95
Victorian planners catalogue of maps and map sources, 95, 98

WISMI, *see* World Inventory of Sources of Music Information
WLN, *see* Washington Library Network
WPB, *see* Australian Advisory Council on Bibliographical Services. Working Party on Bibliography
Walker, Alan, 4, 9, 176-179
Walsh, S.P. *General world atlases in print,* 98
Washington Library Network (WLN), 80, 121, 169, 179
Weekly list of government publications, 23, 24, 28, 29, 30, 51
Wells, J., 93-108, 110, 111
West Australian, 80
Western Association of Map Libraries, 97
Western Australia. Department of Lands and Surveys. *Maps of Western Australia and their uses,* 95
Western Australia. Government Printing Office. *Quarterly price list and information sheet,* 32, 52
Western Australia. Parliamentary Library, 36, 43, 44, 54, 61
Western Australia. State Reference Library. *Cartography in Western Australia,* 95
Western Australian Government Printer, 32, 52
Western Australian government publications, 1829-1959, 46
Western Australian Institute of Technology, 80
White, M., 84
Whittell, H.M., 163
Working Party on Bibliography, *see* Australian Advisory Council on Bibliographical Services. Working Party on Bibliography
Working Party on Information Resources, *see* Australian Advisory Council on Bibliographical Services. Working Party on Information Resources
World Inventory of Sources of Music Information (WISMI), 117-118
Worthington, J.M., 45

Zalums, Elmar. *Western Australian government publications, 1829-1959,* 46
Zwillenberg, H., 78

LIST OF PARTICIPANTS

Abbott, D. State Library of Tasmania
Alison, J. University of Sydney, N.S.W.
Aylmore, N. Hartley College of Advanced Education, S.A.
Baggott,M. National Library of Australia, A.C.T.
Bailey, J.L. Tasmanian College of Advanced Education, School of Librarianship
Barkla, D.S. Queensland Conservatorium of Music
Barry, R. University of Sydney, N.S.W.
Baxter, L. Department of TAFE, N.S.W.
Best, L. Fairfield City Library, N.S.W.
Bettison, M. University of New South Wales
Borchardt, D.H. La Trobe University, Vic.
Bottomley, P. Canberra Public Library Service, A.C.T.
Brady, B.J. University of Sydney, N.S.W.
Brown, W.L. State Library of Tasmania
Bryan, H. National Library of Australia, A.C.T.
Buick, W.G. Murdoch University, W.A.
Bulmer, A. Law Courts Library, N.S.W.
Cain, H.E. Nunawading Public Library, Vic.
Cameron, M. Deakin University, Vic.
Carr, G.H. (student) Kuring-gai College of Advanced Education, School of Library and Information Studies, N.S.W.
Chin, I. CSIRO, Vic.
Chivers, M. Blue Mountains City Library, N.S.W.
Choate, R. La Trobe University, Vic.
Cleary, J. Monash University, Vic.
Cochrane, T. Mt. Gravatt College of Advanced Education, Qld.
Conochie, J. CSIRO, Vic.
Cope, R.L. Parliamentary Library, New South Wales
Crisp, L. Department of TAFE, N.S.W.
Crittenden, V. Canberra College of Advanced Education, A.C.T.
Crook, P. North Brisbane College of Advanced Education, Qld.
Culey, L. (student) Kuring-gai College of Advanced Education, School of Library and Information Studies, N.S.W.
Denis, J. (student) Kuring-gai College of Advanced Education, School of Library and Information Studies, N.S.W.
Dickinson, P.M. University of Sydney, N.S.W.
Doig, R.M. Australian Administrative Staff College, Vic.
Enderby, A. Kuring-gai College of Advanced Education, School of Library and Information Studies, N.S.W.
Evans, J. Library Association of Australia. Audiovisual Services Committee
Fanning, P. (retired)
Field, P. Camberwell-Waverley Regional Library, Vic.
Fielding, F.D.O. University of Queensland
Fisher, U. Alexander Mackie College of Advanced Education, N.S.W.
Flesch, J. University of Melbourne
Gemenis, M. Department of Housing and Construction, N.S.W.
Gilbert, A. Western Australia Institute of Technology.
Goh, J. Siew-Choo. Ballarat College of Advanced Education, Vic.
Goodfellow, P. Blacktown City Library, N.S.W.
Gordon, A. University of Sydney, Law Library, N.S.W.
Groenewegen, H. CAVAL Ltd., Vic.
Hall, E.N. University of Sydney, N.S.W.
Hankel, V. State Library of South Australia

Harley, J. Swinburne Institute of Technology, Vic.
Hazell, J. University of Wollongong, N.S.W.
Hine, J.D. State Library of New South Wales
Ho, R. CSIRO, Vic.
Horn, K.A.R. State Library of Victoria
Irving, B. State Library of New South Wales
Ives, A. Australian Archives, A.C.T.
Jennings, L. Kuring-gai College of Advanced Education, School of Library and Information Studies, N.S.W.
Jones, K. Bicentennial History Project, University of New South Wales
Kulnieks, G.R. Melbourne State College, Vic.
Le Lievre, A. Moorabbin City Library, Vic.
Lee, S.E. Macquarie University, N.S.W.
Londey, A. University of New England, N.S.W.
Macallister, J. State Library of New South Wales
McCarthy, M.R. University of Queensland
McCullagh, L. Macquarie University, N.S.W.
Mackinnon, M. Monash University, Vic.
McMillan, S. University of Queensland
McQueen, J. National Library of Australia, A.C.T.
Martin, G. University of Newcastle, N.S.W.
Maskell, P.E. Western Australian Institute of Technology, Department of Library and Information Studies
Miller, A. La Trobe University, Vic.
Miller, I. Victorian College of the Arts
Morrison, E. Monash University, School of Librarianship, Vic.
Mossel, P. University of Sydney, N.S.W.
Naish, P. Monash University, Vic.
Naylor, P. Whitehorse Technical College, Vic.
Nicolades, I. TECHNILIB, Vic.
O'Brien, L. University of Sydney, Law Library, N.S.W.
Ogg, J. (student) Kuring-gai College of Advanced Education, School of Library and Information Studies, N.S.W.
O'Hagan, M. University of Queensland
Ovedoff, R. State Library of New South Wales
Page, S.B. Griffith University, Qld.
Palmer, B. Kuring-gai College of Advanced Education, School of Library and Information Studies, N.S.W.
Perry, R. Australian National University, A.C.T.
Pinson, W.J. Warrnambool Institute of Advanced Education, Vic.
Prescott, D. National Library of Australia, A.C.T.
Raymond, I.D. University of Adelaide, S.A.
Richardson, W.D. University of Melbourne
Roberts, E. Office of Library Co-operation, N.S.W.
Ronan, W. University of Sydney, N.S.W.
Routh, S. University of Queensland
Royal, I. National Library of Australia, A.C.T.
Russell, S. (student) Kuring-gai College of Advanced Education, School of Library and Information Studies, N.S.W.
Sandry, G. Auburn Municipal Library, N.S.W.
Schmidt, L.S. State Library of South Australia
Scrivener, J. University of Tasmania
Sharman, R.C. Library Board of Western Australia
Simkin, J. Moorabbin City Library, Vic.
Smyth, P.A. State College of Victoria-Coburg
Southwell, T.B. Monash University, Vic.

Stark, H. Fairfield City Library, N.S.W.
Stecher, G. La Trobe University, Vic.
Stockdale, N. Flinders University of South Australia
Stokes, J. Parliamentary Library, A.C.T.
Sugden, H. Library Board of Western Australia.
Thawley, J. La Trobe University, Vic.
Troy, B. University of Sydney, N.S.W.
Walker, A. University of New South Wales
Wells, C. University of Sydney, N.S.W.
Wells, J. State Library of Victoria
Whitehead, D. State Library of Victoria
Wilkinson, E.H. Macquarie University, N.S.W.
Williamson, R. State Library of New South Wales
Woods, J.P. Macquarie University, N.S.W.